





VALENTINE AND ORSON:

The Two Sonnes of the Emperour
of GREECE,

Newly corrected and amended, with new Pictures
lively expressing the History.



Printed at London by ROBERT IBBITSON
Anno Dom. MDCXLIX.

VALENTINE

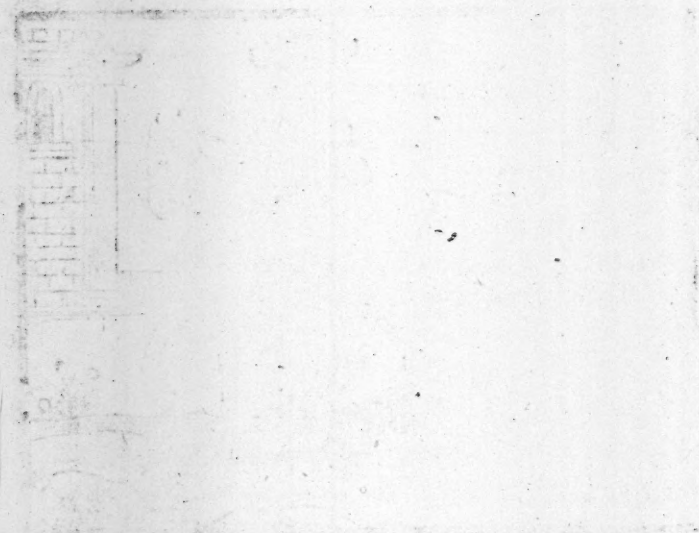
AND

OF THE

The Two Faces of the Impression

OF GROUND

Two Faces of the Impression
The Two Faces of the Impression



Printed and Published by H. B. Robinson
New York, N. Y.



The PRINTER to the READER.

AMongst many Histories, as well Ancient as Modern, which have in former times borrowed our English phrase to speak withall: This (gentle Reader) here of *Valentine and Orson*, Sons to the Emperour of *Greece*, now once again newly imprinted, craves a free passage of thy acceptance, and puts it self to the censure of those Historiographers which make *Invention* the eldest Daughter of the *Seven Sciences*.

Therefore considering with my self the worthines of the story, with the variety therof, being many years ago, first written in *French*, and since translated into *English*, where it hath found a favorable welcome, as wel of superiors, as of inferiors: I have now again to my cost and charge, published it to the eye & eare of such to be seen or heard, as take pleasure in these kind of writings.

To the Reader.

ings. It is furnished with much state of matter, Elegancy and Invention, and decked forth with many fair models and lively Pictures, all pertinent and agreeable to the subject of the History, which I have caused to be newly cut, not only to make it carry the more grace in reading, but a more lustre to heroick atchievements of knightly adventures: For here may the Princely mind see his own model, the Knightly Tilter his martial atchievements, and the amorous Lady her dulcet passages of love, here are Countries with the Courts of Kings deciphered, the magnitude of Honors laid open, the true forme of Tournaments described, and combats between knight and knight are here most lively portrayed, to the great content of the Reader. Let no man, therefore, think his time ill spent, or his labour lost where the matter affordeth such copiousnesse of pleasure: The History for the strangenes, may well bear the title of *Courty contents*, for indeed it is a garden of courtly delights, wherein grows flowers of an extraordinary flavor, that gives a scent even into the bosoms of Nobility, Ladies, Knights, & Gentlemen: It gives also a working to the minds of the dull country swaynes, and as it were leads them to search out for Martiall atchieve.

To the Reader.

chievements, besitting many pastimes, & active pleasures : Herein also is contained the true difference betwixt art and nature, for in *Valentine* is comprehended the education of art, & in *Orson* the true working of Nature, for being both one Emperors Sons, the one of them brought up in a Princes Pallace, the other among savage beasts now makes the currant passe with the more admiration to the Reader, mark but the carriage of wild *Orson*, and you shal find that nature hath a being above art, but yet Nature bettered by Art, hath a more noble Working.

The History here written, was translated out of French into English above 100 years ago, by one *Henry Watson*, and since that time it hath by him been Corrected, and put into a more plegant stile, and so followed on to the Presse till this present Edition, which I have (as you see) here published for thy benefit ; Therefore gentle Reader, accept of this my cost and pains, who had rather prove loser, than so worthy a story as this is, should lye in obscurity, for there are few Subjects of humane carriage, but are herein handled, therefore the more fitting to be seen into : If you desire to see the cares and troubles of
Kings,

Kings, here they are: If you desire to know the battels of Martiall Champions, here they are: If of Courtly Tournaments and Combats of Princes, here they are: If of the travailes of knightly adventures, here they are: if of the sorrows of distressed Ladies, here they are: if of strange births, and savage educations, here they are: if of friends long lost, & of their joyful meetings again, here they are: if of charms and enchantments, here they are: if the reward of Traitors & treasons, here they are: if of long captivities and imprisonments, here they are; yea, here are all the varieties, & passages that may furnish forth a History fit for a Readers pleasure, for no unseemly words or speeches are herein contained, but such as are modestly carried.

Considering all which, I am now encouraged to put this old story into a new Livery, and not to suffer that to lye buried, that a little cost may keep alive; And so (gentle Reader) craving thy kind acceptance, I wish thee as much willingness to the reading, as I have been forward in the Printing, and so I end,

Farewell.



The History of *Valentine* and *Orson*.

CHAP. I.

How King *Pepin* banished his Queen *Bertha*; And how he gave his
Sister *Bellysant* in Marriage to *Alexander* Emperor of
Constantinople.



WE find it credibly set downe in ancient Chron-
icles, that the thrice Noble and Valiant *Pepin*
sometimes a King of France, tooke to wife,
one *Bertha*, who was descended of no lesse then
Royall race. This Lady was exceeding faire
and tosse, but wondrously cumbered with many
adversities and troubles, enbrouly beset on e-
very side: which, with great patience she alwaies suffered.

The cheife Instrument of all this treacherous mischeife toward
this good Queene, was plotted and effected by a false and cursed
old-woman, who first of all brought her in disgrace with the King
her husband, and after to be quite banished his bed, whilst shee in
cunning manner, brought in a daughter of her owne unto the
Kings bed, instead of his good Queene *Bertha*. This Old-woman,
having thus brought her Treachery to effect (for her Daugh-
ter some-what resembled *Bertha*) It so came to passe, that King
Pepin had two sonnes by this Maiden: to wit *Hauferi* and *Hen-
ry*, both which Sonnes so grieved the King, and so wasted the
Country of France by their out-rages and fury, that in the end
they caused the Queene *Bertha* to be utterly banished, where shee

passed a great part of her daies in doleful lamentations and abundance of sorrow. She long induring these miserable daies of sorrow, at the last began to receiue comfort againe. For it so chanced after, at the earnest suit and request of diuers great Pères and Lords of France, that this good Quene beganne to find fauour againe with King Pepin her husband, (who when he knew the treacherie that the wicked Old Woman had plotted against her) much bewailed the miseries she had indured, and with great Honour and Triumph receiued her againe most kindly. The Quene being thus againe restored to her former bed, in short time conceiued and bare unto the King a goodly Sonne; called Charlemaine the puissant: but the King himselte was continually hunted from place to place, by the aforesaid Hauferi and Henry, and at the last by them compelled to forsake his Realme, as hereafter followeth moze at large in the ensuing History. My purpose now at this present is, to set downe unto the Reader, the whole matter contained in this Booke: and especially, the valiant acts and deeds of Valentine and his Brother Orson.

This King Pepin, had a Sister called Bellysant a woman of great wit, beautie and all the endowments that Nature might afford, which caused her Brother Pepins love mightily to appeare to all the world, in the ardent love and affection that he bare towards her. It chanced so that the fame of this lobely personage spread it selfe so abroad in other Regions, that at last, King Alexander, Emperoz of Constantinople, who was much inflamed with her beautie, came into France accompanied with a gallant Troope of his Nobilitie, all richly set out with all manner of pompe belonging to a great personage.

This Emperoz, shortly after his arrivall, suddenly assembled all his Lords, in their rich habitments, appointing them to take their way towards King Pepins Court, to declare unto him the cause of his comming which was to enioy his faire Sister Bellysant in Marriage. The Nobles, according to his Command, came unto King Pepin, declaring unto him the cause of their Emperours comming into his Country: which when King Pepin understood, hee sorrowfully entertained them, and granted quickly the Emperours request.

King Pepin understanding this sudden (but ioyfull) News, made great preparation in his Court, for the entertaining of this Noble Emperoz: and caused all his Nobles and Attendants to goe with him in great Pompe and Triumph, to meet this Noble Emperoz, All things being in a readinesse, King Pepin with all his Noble Train, went to meete Alexander Emperoz of Constantinople: to whom when they met, they entertained with great ioy, and conducted him to the Court of France, where faire Belysant was, and she entertained him with no lesse ioy, then her Brother King Pepin had done before: and there they spent their time in great ioy and triumphing.

This Mariage being once publicly knowne among all the Inhabitants, ioy began to shew forth it self on ebery side, for such a happy day, wherein such good alliance was knit between the Emperour Alexander and Pepin King of France, that Triumphs began in ebery place against the Nuptiall dayes appea-



rance. When the time appointed came, these two were espoused in all honour fitting for their Estates: and Largesse shewed it selfe on ebery side. This Marriage Feast indured long, but at last being ended, the Emperour assisted with all his worthy Trainee made preparation to take their leaue of King Pepin his Brother in law, and take their way towards Constantinople, with his faire Emperesse Bellyfant. Being thus all mounted on Horsebacke, King Pepin also set forward with his Brother Emperour, to bring him on his way, Royally attended on ebery side, with Lords, Ladies, and many other Gallants of the Court: And they that could not find legs to goe, found eyes to wepe at the departure of their faire Lady and Distresse the new Emperesse of Constantinople.

At last, both these mighty Princes came neare unto a Port of the Sea, wherewith they must needs part: there taking leaue of each other, they were forced to render more thankes in teares than words, the which I am not able to expresse. But aboue all, the Emperour yeelded King Pepin worthy thankes, for his quick, sudaine, and generous consent in giuing to him his fair Sister Bellyfant, and with so franke and free a heart to yeeld him his good will. At which words of the Emperour unto King Pepin, the King presently embraced him in his armes, saying, Faire Sir, and my Right loving Lord and Brother, I haue not receiued you according as your estate required, nor with such Triumphes and Magnificence as became me, but in that you haue so graciously accepted my smal power, I hold my self content in that I haue don, but not that I should haue done: and therefore there belongeth small thanks unto me, but from me, innumerable: in that you haue bene pleased to accept of my Sister for your wife: whereby (I trust) long friendship shall be continued betwixt us: In token whereof, I take witnesse of all that are here present, that my body, my Realme, my Goods, and all the powers that I can raise in France, to aduenture for your safety and succor all the daies of my life.

King Pepin being now departed from the Emperour, turned himselfe unto his Sister Bellyfant, and in this manner takes his leaue: Faire Sister (quoth he) thinke no longer of this Country

of France, wherein you have spent your infant daies, but remember that you are removed to a Country of other conditions. Also, let your behaviour be such, that I, the rest of our Friends, and the whole company of all the Peers, may have honour and joy in you.

Againe, as the Country whither you now doe goe is strange unto you, so be you governed by the modest Ladies of the Land, and gibe no eare to wicked Councell, or to such as would move you to disloyalty. For you are the Creature that I have alwayes dearest loved in all the world, wherefore, If I should hear tydings other than good from you, or of you, it would be the onely cause to take away my life. After this he gave unto his Sister many worthy gifts, and so embracing and kissing her, with weeping eyes, he left her to the mercy of the Utlaves. The young Lady, whose heart being overcharged betwixt Joy and Feare, was not able to answer a word, and what with teares and sighes, the passage of her tongue was utterly stopt. Then all the Lords and Ladies took their leave each of other, at which was let fall many a bzinish tear as well on their parts of France, as they also that were to goe for Constantinople, but especially, for the departure, of the Faire Lady Bellysant.

All duties of love being ended, King Pepin returned into France and the Emperour by this time mounted on the Seas, had wind and water at such will and pleasure, that within short space hee with all his Train arrived with safety at Constantinople: where at their landing they were all received with great Joy, Honour, and Triumph: all which, here were needlesse to recount. But marke what happened: not long after these Joies and Triumphes were cleane extinguished that was made for the Ladie Bellysant, in place thereof, nothing but mournings, lamentations, and tears were placed, and all for the said poore Ladie, which by treason and false accusations, was cast out and banished, as hereafter more at large you shall perceibe.



C H A P. II.

How the Arch-Priest of Constantinople betrayed the Emperour his Lord and Master in making love to fair *Belysant* the Em-
presse, and what evill followed thereupon.

IN Constantinople lived an Arch-Priest, in whom the Emperour put such trust and loved so fervently, that he bestowed upon him great Riches and Possessions, and committed all his Bosome-thoughts unto his secrecy : And in the end made him sole-Governor and Commander over his house, as also, he was the Emperours principall Confessor, and one of his greatest Counsellors, for the which, hee afterward had many a forgotten heart.

This Bishop, forgetting all the Emperours favours and great honours done unto him, being intangled and overcome with the beauty of the new Emperesse, which excelled all mortall creatures : Inordinate lust prevailed with him so far, that there was nothing stood in his way, save onely fit time and opportunity to settle this his determination. At last, it so chanced on a day, that he espied her all alone sitting solitarily in her Chamber, which this Arch-Priest well observing, hee came into the Chamber likewise, and fate done by her, At last, he began to behold her with a smiling and jesting countenance, of all which, the Lady mistrusted nothing for that shee very well remembred his greatnesse with the Emperour, and his familiarity in the house, and shee never so much as once Dreaming or thinking of such an evill thought, as that, hee thereby would colour so foule and filthy an Act, as to motion her to dishonour, especially, towards the Emperour his worthy Lord and Master, who so dearely esteemed of him, and so much affected him : But there is never moze danger like to ensue, then when one of the same house intendeth Treason. But at the last, after many jestures of impurity, and sitting still by this worthy and vertuous Lady, hee began to utter his lascivious thoughts on this manner.

Right

Right Deare and Soberaign Lady (quoth he) I am your Ser-
 vant and Chaplain, therefore I beseech you not to stop your ears,
 but rather set them wide open to heare my rude words, especially
 for that I am burnt up in affection towards your sayre person, and
 for whose love, I have suffered intolerable toments in my fiery
 bosome. Know therefore, (my redoubted Lady) that the beauty
 of your admirall person, and the supernaturall forme wherein you
 are framed and composed, hath eben ravished my Spirits, broken
 my heart, split my whole senses in sunder, and quite bereft me of
 all rest both by night and day, and onely with doting upon your
 precelesse Beauty. Againe (faire Lady) my meate, ozinke, man-
 ners, pea, and my very countenance, they all plead at the Bar
 of your faire face and resplendent Countenance, Insomuch, that
 onely my request and prayers unto the Gods, is eben this, that
 they would so enchant that heart of yours, that you would at length
 give consent unto me your bassall, that I might not onely serve
 you, but also delight you in al those pleasures you are ordained un-
 to. If Lady you refuse me, and cast me off, denying these my
 uncesslesse thoughts (then which nothing will sooner cut my heart
 in sunder) I can looke for nothing but present Death, and rather
 covet therein to be locked fast, as in a prison, then receive deniall
 from those your faire lips. Alas (fair Lady) you are renowned in
 all the gifts of nature: Faire, Amiable, Courteous, Gentle, and
 also Pouthfull, be not then the cause that I should determine my
 life by losing your love, but rather grant what I desire, and ther-
 by make mee for ever yours in hearty affection. But Lady, hap-
 pily you will urge how dare you to offend the Gods in this un-
 lawfull Act? To this fair Lady I answer, I am one of the Vicars
 of the Gods upon earth, and therefore it wholly rests in my power,
 to absolve you from your sins, and injoyne you penance, which
 trust me Lady, shall fall out to be but very easie, so you grant mee
 love.

These speeches of his being ended, the Lady thereunto out of a
 grave and prudent carriage, made unto this persur'd Priest this ex-
 cellent rephebenion and answer. Ah, thou false, unjust disloyall,
 and Diabellish Priest, staine to all thy Profession: how darest
 thou once open thy persyured mouth to such a masse of Willantes as
 there-

thereout may ensue? First, as I said against thy sacred order: secondly, but most principally against the Majesty of that Emperour, that hath eber nourished thee in the bond of tender compassion and love, and hath raised thee to great dignities farre unfit for such a debill incarnate: And from whom may justly proceed the sentence of condemnation, both on thee and mee, if he should but understand thy lascivious and wicked practices. Thou (I say, Debill and worse then Debill) thou, that shouldest be unto me instruction, and also a guide to my life and conberstation, in this thou goest about my utter ruine and destruction, by thy ebill conditions, eben beyond that good expectation which the Emperour trusteth to bee in thee. O never grant (O ye gods) that the blood of France, from whence I am descended, nor the Emperour my loving Lord, should be so dishonoured, either by me in my body, or through my privity in any other manner. O false accursed man; behold whereunto thou wouldest deliber me: first, unto the utter ruine and spoyle of mine honour: next, shut up my body in unremovable shame for eber, amongst men: And lastly, bring my soule into the Jawes of death, and the Debill. Let fall, I say, all these thy bile and Debillish provocations to lust, and leaue for eber hereafter to sollicite me or any other vertuous creature on this manner, which if thou further prosecute unto me, then canst thou look for nothing but a shamefull docton-fall, and a most damnable death. Therfore with this answer depart, and see that ye attempt me no more.

This angry farewell of the woorthy Emperesse stung the Priest at the very heart, but at that time hee durst make no further reply unto the faire Lady concerning love, but as a man all composed of rage & great fury, he then departed, discontent at this his most unfortunate & unhappy chance. At the last, when he could no longer hold, hee excused himselfe unto the Ladie, craving pardon for these his bold, sawcy, and rash follies committed, but yet could find no remedie to restore his honour. Thus being sore troubled in minde with sundry waies, he resolved what to doe upon revenge against this Innocent, which hee accordingly effected by Treason against the Ladie. And seeing the Emperour knew nothing in this matter from the Emperesse Bellysant, howe the Arch-Priest would have inticed her to dishonour, & would have dratone her

her to dis-loyalty to the Emperour, but he could not, therefore he began to accuse her unto the Emperoz for others crimes as hereafter moze at large followeth to be spoken in this next ensuing Chapter.



CHAP. III.

How the Arch-Priest having received this repulse at the hands of *Belysant*, to save his honour, practised Treason against the Innocent Lady.



THE Arch-Priest, having now begun to set abroad his Debillish practises, beganne to bethinke him how he might effect what he had determined, and also preserve the reputation of his former Honors which the Emperour had bestowed upon him: whereupon at last he resolved, that he would cunningly under the cloake of dissimulation beare faire weather toward the Emperour, as also seemed to shew how great care he had of his preservation, and to make knowne his loyalty and watchfull care that he ever had towards the welfare of his estate and person. So it befell that on a day when as he espied a fit opportunity, and taking the Emperoz all alone, he began to breake with him on this manner, as followeth.

Right High and Mighty Emperoz, and my very good Lord and Master, I cannot chouse but recount and highly esteeme of the many and innumerable labours and great kindnes which I have alwayes received from your mighty Highnesse: wherefore as duty doth alwayes bind me, I am ever most watchfull over the passage of your Estate, in which I now stand by you appointed. But especially in that you have made mee sole Commander in your house, and therein trusted me above all other: therefore it is my duty, to be tray unto you al those cariages that any way concerne your High and Mighty person, wherefore I beseech your Highnes to give care to that which I shall now disclose unto you

for I had rather suffer all the torments of Death, then for to hide any thing from you: and the rather, for that it nearly toucheth your person, profit, and honour. O Emperour thus it is, Bellyfanc your Wife, and Sister to the King of France, she, whom you have advanced to this state and dignity, faileth in the duty and loyalty which she oweth unto her deead Lord: for she wandreth in her lobe giving it unto another, which is proper onely to your selfe: To name the person unto your Majesty I will not, for you know I am a sacred Priest, and may not take the blood of any man, but yet know for certaine that by way of Confession I came unto the light hereof, wherefore I neither ought nor will betray the Name of him that thus usurps your bed: but let it suffice, there is not a more uncleane and lascivious Woman lieth in your Court or Kingdom, whereby your life is in danger, your honour defamed, and my duty towards you approbod by what I have told you. My advice therefore is to bee wary of your Person, and correct this her folly, but yet mildly and wisely, alwaies with the preferbation of your honour. For will it not be a great shame among the Princes of the earth, that you having taken a Wife, Sister to a great King, one who for her beauty is incomparable, her noblenesse & wisdom not to be out-shined of any earthly Lady, and shee to prove a Whore: and what worse is, one who daily desireth your death, which grieves my heart to thinke upon.

The Emperour having heard this long accusation, little mistrusted the Treachery of this Arch-Priest, but gave credit unto all his faire, but false words: and withall, became extream pen-sive and sad, that his trust in her beauteous Lobe, had been thus deceived. At last, having many dayes in many places uttered forth many discontented gestures, words and sighes: and many grievous acclamations, even in the Emperiall Palace, he gave rest a while unto his discontented Passions, but awakened rebenge to wait upon fitter opportunity. And upon a day, entering into the Chamber of his faire Lady Bellyfanc, and without speaking any word to her at all, in most fierce, rude, and unmanly order, tooke his Lady by the head, and pulling her by the hair, he dragged her about the Chamber, throwing her on the ground in such horrid manner, that the blood besmeared all her face in most inhumane sort.

fort. The Lady receiuing from her Lord such unlookt-for welcome, crept out in lamentable manner, and as well as she was able, began to say: Alas (my deare Lord) what murther you to this unwelcome out-rage? I call all the gods to witness, I neuer did any thing in my life, either against your honour or life, or euer prostituted my body to any Strangers lobe. The Emperour not being thus satisfied, replied, saying: Thou Deuill, I am too well informed of thy proceedings, and cursed be the day and houre, that euer I saw thy deceitbeable face, and therewithall, without all pittie dashed her head against the ground, leauing her speechlesse: inso-much, that all the Damoisels her attendants, thought shee had been quite bereft of life. Upon this, there arose up in the Court, a most pittifull out-cry, which the Councellours and other Attendants in the Court hearing, ran speedily to the Chamber, whereas they found this Lady in a Trance: at which disaster, all amazed some ran to take up the dead body of the Emperesse: Others tooke upon them to speake unto the Emperour, thinking thereby to stay the fury of this undescribed rage, whose words unto him were as followeth.

Alas (O dread Soberaign) what may be the cause of this your suddain passion in delibering unto danger of death, this so modest, chaste and noble a Lady: a Lady so beloved of all degrees, and in whom was neuer scene the least sparke of dishonour, neither, towards you nor any within this Empire: wherefore our request unto you is, that you would moderat your wrong conceived anger against this harmlesse Lady. The Emperour nothing for all this relenting, answered: Speake no more, for I know, I see, I heare, how cunningly shee hath deluded me: Therefore murther me no further, for I am fully purposed to deliver her over to Death, and he, or they shall hereunto gaine say, I shall make him partaker (in Death) with this wicked and disloyall Strumpet.

These words was no sooner uttered, but up arose a worthy, wise, and courageous bold Baron, and spake unto the Emperour, after this manner: Right worthy sir, I could wish you to be well advised before you further proceed against this Lady, who is your espoused wife, sister to a great King, namely Pepin King of France who when he shall heare of this wrong done to her, will out of a

courageous heart and a brotherly affection, muster up al his men of war, and suddenly surprize our Townes, Houses, Wives, and Children, forgetting mercy, and only pursuing revenge upon us, for these merclesse and cruell deeds unto his Sister. Again, consider on the other side that the Lady is great with Child, therefore it is dangerous so rudely to smite and wound her on this manner wherein you have proceeded against her. The worthy Barron having thus ended his advice, the Lady suddenly fell upon her knees before the Emperoz, and in tears very submissively and lamentably, thus she spake.

Alas (my Lord) take pittie on an Innocent Lady, for I am so free from any evill Act, as I never so much as thought any evill against your person or dignity: at least my Lord, if your compassion be quite extinct from pittying me, yet pittie the fruit of my body, for I am great with child by you, of which the Gods grant me a ioyfull delibery. If nothing can appease your anger towards me then let my body be imprisoned in some strong Tower, till the time of my delibery, and then do with my body what please th you so the fruit of my body may be kept safe. In this dolorous passion she proceeded so farre, that what with her sighes and teares following one of the other, it would have grieved the stoniest heart, that ever rested in the bosome of the vilest Tyrant that ever reigned.

All this nothing moved the hard-hearted Emperoz, who was so wholly bewitched with the false and traiterous accusation of the Arch-Priest, that all lenity set apart, he burst out in this manner: Thou false Strumpet, the Child thou goest withal is to me no joy but rather great dishonour, for thy behaviour and thy disloyalty hath made such a separation between us, that nothing thy dissolute life thou hast made another partner in my labo. The Courtiers perceiving nothing could mitigate the rage of the Emperoz, by a common consent removed her out of his presence into another Chamber, bestowing unto her all the favour they could, both in action and gesture, although her faire face was sozr deformed and besmeared with blood. Having thus conveyed her away, the Ladies that were attendant, fetched water to wash her face, and all they could, rebited her ever-dying Spirits. Being thus in
and

another Chamber, in comes Blandiman her Squire, who beholding her in this disfigured manner, for very pittie the Water trickled down his Cheekes, and at the last he began his speech in this manner.

Oh Adam, I plainly see that you are traitterously handled and with Gods would throw down their malignant curses upon that person that hath thus purchased your extreame miseries: but gentle Lady take comfort unto you, and trust me, if you will be ruled by me, I will conduct you backe againe into France toward your Brother King Pepin, who gave me and my Service unto you, to attend you in all these misfortunes, all which I will to the uttermost of my power undertake. Sweet Lady followe my Counsell and free your selfe out of danger: for bee you assured, that if here you stay, the Emperoz will prosecute rebenge upon you, and in the end bring you unto a shamefull death.

Unto this the sorrowfull Lady made this reply: Oa Blandiman I know thy faithfull service towards me, but yet, if I should followe thy advice, and steale out of this Country secretly, it would argue me guilty of all that infamy the Emperoz throweth upon me, and thereby yeld me guilty of the deed: Beleeve me Servant, I had rather die all the deaths the world can lay upon me, rather then to bear the blame of that wherein I am an innocent.

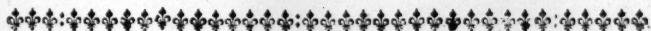
By this time the Emperors choller was some-what pacified, by meanes of his Lords and Barons that attended, inasmuch that hee caused Belysant to be quickly brought before him. When she was come, his heart trembled and fretted for very anger, that he durst not put her to death, fearing the puissance and might of her Brother King Pepin, and therefore brast out into these speeches: Thou false and accursed woman, by whom mine honour is brought in question, I take the Gods to witness, were it not for thy Brothers sake, the valiant Pepin King of France, I would make thee fry in the fire, as an example to all faire Ladies: but for his sake I spare thy life, stand forth and heare thy judgement, I banish thee out of my Country and Empire, expressly commanding, that without any delay, to morrow thou depart out of this City, and if thou shalt ever be seene here any more, I assure thee thou shalt suffer Death in all extremitie: Also, I straightly
com.

command; that none of my Countie dare be once so hardy, as to
 giue aide or accompany you, save only your seruant Blandiman;
 whom you brought with you out of France. Goe get thee presently
 out of my sight, for thou shalt ne ver more sleep in my bosome. The
 Emperour habing pronounced sentence against her: the Emperesse
 Belysant, accompanied with her seruant Blandiman, speedily hast-
 ed to horse. Being thus mounted, and then passing through this
 faire City towards one of the gates thereof, there met her people
 in great multitudes, of all degrees much lamenting the losse of so
 faire a Lady, and so lobely an Emperesse. When shee came to the
 utmost part, euen ready to goe out of the Gates of the City, there
 was heard such a lamentable howling of mournful voyces, that the
 like was neber heard in the City of Constantinople.

When shee was out of the Wallles of the City, and but newly
 entred into the Wilde Fields, shee began to fall into a womanly
 fit of bitter weeping, to see how shamefully and dishonourably shee
 was handled, causelesse. Againe, to think upon her Birth, and the
 Imperiall Dignity from whence shee was fallen, as also to re-
 count the misfortunes wherein shee was like to finish the rest of
 her daies, it drabe her at last from teares, to utter her griefes in
 these words: Alas in what unhappy houre was I borne, to fall
 from so high Estate, to so low and abiect poverty as I am now
 in? Woe is mee, the unhappiest among Women? Now are all
 my ioyes turned topsie turvy, my laughter is turned into weep-
 ing, my Songs converted into sighes. Instead of Cloath of gold
 wherewith I was wont to bee cloathed, now I am glad of all
 manner of meane attire: My precious stones of inestimable Wa-
 few are all taken from me, and Pearles of teares stand ober all
 my Garments. Oh you Fields and Woods, to you I make my
 moane, for other company I have none, consider my exile, and
 helpe to betwaile my misfortunes. Oh would the Gods had pittied
 my distresse, and made me the poorest amongst Creatures, then
 had not fortune giben me so foule a fall, at least my poore Estate
 would neber have grieved mee: Wherefore doth the beauteous
 Sunne send forth his beames upon a wretch so miserable? Why
 doth the earth beare such a Creature, that is all composed of cala-
 mities, It is not possible for my tongue to tell out my hearts sor-
 row.

roto. O wretched man (whatsoever thou art) that by thy wicked Treason hast brought me to this downfall, I may well curse thee with bitterness of heart, for by thee only am I made thus unfortunate: Ah my Brother what shouldst thou do with such a wofull wight to thy Sister? It had been better I had never been born, then that I should prove such a stain to thy Kings house, As thee was thus complaining to her secret hart, the anguish therof struck her into a swoond, as she sat on horseback, and was ready at the instant to have fallen from off her Horse, ere her servant could aslight to recover her, but he used all the speediest means for her recovery, at last she coming unto her self again, he said unto her.

Alas Madam, be not so discomfited, neither let despaire so far seize upon you, but trust ye that the gods will keepe and defend you, for they are ready to aid and assist the Innocent. Having thus spoken, he suddenly espied a Fountain, toward the which he and his Lady took their way, and being come neer thereunto, he set her down thereby, to ease and refresh her long over-tired senses. Here at this Spring leaue we the Lady and her Squire, and turn wee now to the Treacherous Arch-Priest, who was the cause of all these Treacherous and evill practises.



CHAP. IV.

How the Arch-Priest put upon him the habit of a Knight at Arms, and being well mounted, followed the Emperesse Bellyfant, who was lately banished.



THE Arch-Priest having now wrought the banishment of fair Bellyfant, thought with himself now he should surely accomplish his desire: wherefore in al hast he changed his white Rochet, into a cote of Steele, and begirt unto his side a Sword, and being thus accoutred, he suddenly was mounted upon a Milke-white Steed, the fairest that could bee had in all Constantinople. Being thus mounted, he made after with all expedition, inquiring of all he met, which way the Lady Bellyfant was

was taken, who gladly told him which way she lately passed. After some few hours riding, at last he came to a great spacious Forrest, and very long, taking the direct way towards the Lady. It chanced that as he was riding forward, casting his eye aside he presently espied the Lady, with her servant Blandiman, sitting by a Fountain, but suddenly withdrew himself, and coming nearer, found the Lady sitting by the same full of heaviness, lamenting her miserable misfortunes, and by her sat her trusty servant comforting her.

This false Priest, from forth his Weaver, well perceived it to be the Lady, but by reason of his disguise, she could not imagine him to be the Arch-Priest her enemy, but cunning nearer unto her, she soon descried him, and being stricken with a sudden fear, spake thus to her servant. Alas (quoth she) I well perceive this to be the false Arch-Priest, that thus cometh towards us, of whom I am exceeding fearefull, least he be come to do me further villany. Lady (quoth Blandiman) banish feare, for if he come after us to doe you further harme, I will encounter him body for body, eben as long as life lasteth. By this time that they had ended their speech each to other, the Arch-Priest was ready to alight from his Horse, to salute the Lady in all courteous behaviour: and after he had made himselfe known unto her, he began to say unto her after this manner..

Right deare Lady, and our late honoured Emperesse, sith thy case is so pittifull, as to suffer banishment by sentence given against thee by the Emperour, so it is, that if thou wilt gibe me entertainment in my love, accept me into thy favour, and to grant what I have long sought at thy hands, I will bring it to passe, that the Emperour shall again recall thy Banishment, and make thy greatnesse of State, shine more bright then eber before. Therefore advise you well, for I protest what I offer to you, is only tending to your god and advancement. Ha (quoth the Lady) thou disloyall and traitterous adversary, I have no great cause to bestow love, where my life hath been put in jeopardy. It is only thou that hast wrought my overthrow: and thou it is, that makest me to spend the remnant of my daies in more misery then eber Lady is able to indure, Lady (quoth he) utter not forth such curses against me

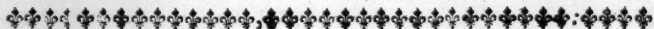
me

me, for I come not to you, to beze or trouble you, but to heape up-
on you moze joys then eber you as yet in al your life inioied, And
in speaking these wordz, he bended his body to the Lady, think-
ing to haue kissed her, but Blandiman perceiuing his intet sudden-
ly started between them, & gaue the Arch-Priest so mighty a stroke
he felled him to the earth, & with the violence of the blow, brak
out one of his teeth. The Arch Priest had no sooner recovered him-
self from the ground, but suddenly betook him to his sword, which
Blandiman perceiuing, betook him to a Glabe which he has about
him, whereupon grew a fore and dangerous fight between them.

This incounter lasted so long, that they were both wounded, but
still they continued fighting, till at length it chanced a Merchant
came that way, who perceiuing a far off their fierce encounter,
cryed out with a loud boice in this manner: Lords, Lords, quoth
hee, leaue off: and shew the cause of this your variance, and I shal
do my best to end this Controberisie. Sir (quoth Blandiman) let
us first try our right by our weapons, and after wards we wil be
ruled by wordz. But the poore Lady could no longer forbear si-
lence, but began to tell the Merchant as followeth. Alas (quoth
she) as you eber pittied woman, pittie my case: for this man, whom
here you see armed, is the false and Traiterous Arch-Priest, that
hath followed me to rob me of my Honour, and force me to his
wicked and unsatiate Lust: Also, this is he that hath made a se-
paration between me and the Emperour my Lord and Husband.
The Merchant hearing her lamentable tale, pittied her misery,
and began thus unto the Arch-Priest: Sir Priest, leaue off your
enterprize, and dare not so much as to touch this innocent Lady,
for if the Emperour did but understand this billang, he would soon
end thy life in infamy, as thou well deserbest. As soon as the Arch-
Priest had heard his speech, he forsooke the Combate, & fled as fast
as he could through the wood, for fear of being further knowne
being prebeted of his purpose toward the Lady: though he concei-
ed his body out of sight, yet his villaines were afterward disclosed.
After his departure, the Lady was forced to stay still in the wood all
sorrowfull, & her wounded seruant. The Merchant staid with them
some little time, bewailing the hard hap of the Lady, yet comfort-
ed her, saying: Alas Lady, I see that this Arch-Priest hath
falsely betrayed you, and brought you into hatred with the Empe-

rou, but I will promise you, that if I live I will betwray all these Treacheries to the Emperour, and bring the Traytor to a shamefull death. And so taking leabe, I commend you to the Gods, wishing that in these extremities you would be patient, and comfort your selfe in these your sorowes: so with many thanks for his aide from Blandiman, the Marchant departed.

The Marchant having left them, Blandiman set þ Lady upon her horse, and himselfe on his, so riding on together, they came unto a lodging lying in their way, where they remained eight daies. During which time, her servant was recovered of his wounds, & then set forward toward France, the Lady still sorowfull & complaining in this manner. Alas Blandiman what may my Brother and the Pères of France thinke of this when they shall understand that I am expelled Greece for such a dishonourable deed, and as a common Harlot banished from the Emperour of Constantinople. Alas I am perswaded that the King my brother will easily entertaine it, that I am guilty of the deed, and in his anger, care not to deliberate ober to death. Lady (quoth he) be not thus discouraged, but trust in the Gods, who will rebenge your injuries, and pay it home upon the offenders head. During the time of these discourtes, they had passed diuers Countries and Regions, till at last, they came into France, and passing by Orleance, they took their way towards Paris, where King Pepin was accustomed to sojourne. So entring into a Forrest nere unto Orleance, there happened new miseries unto this Empreffe, of which more hereafter ensueth.



CHAP. V.

How Bellyfant in her banishment, was delivered of two fair Sons in the Wood, whose names were *Valentine* and *Orson*, and how shee lost them.

Bellyfant (as before you heard) being with Child, was suddenly overtaken in the Forrest. The time of her delivery being come, caused her to forsake her Horse, and begonne to conpaine to her servant, on this manner. Alas (quoth she) helpe, helpe, I say,

say, to lay me down softly under ponder great tree, and when I am laid make hast and finde me helpe of women, wheresoeber thou canst get any, for I can goe no further, my paines so much increase in multitudes, upon me.

Blandiman her serbant did as she commanded, and for that hee knew not how to find the same place again, he set a speciall marke, that he might the readier come thither again: and so betaking him to horse, he rode forth stoutly to seek some woman to helpe this distressed Lady.

He being gone, the Lady was left comfortlesse all alone, without succour of any creature, so that at last she was delivered of two faire Sons, in the desolate Forrest. These Childzen were no sooner come into the world, but a fresh misery worse then al the rest



that she had indured hapened to this Lady, for as she lay upon the earth under þ tree, and her two Infants by her, suddenly came to her a huge bear, most horrible to behold, took up one of the Infants in her mouth, & with great pace hasted into þ thickest of þ Forrest. This strange sunlokt for accident, frighted the distressed Lady to the soul, that she cried out most lamentably, getting up upon her hands & feet, to hasten after the aforesaid Bear, which was quickly got out of her sight. But alas, it little abayled her to make any further pursuite, for she neber came unto the sight of the Child; till by Miracle it was at length disclosed. So long wandered this Lady up and dothone, and from place to place weeping and crying out for her Child, that being overtweared with trabeill she fell into a great sickenes, insomuch that at the last she was thereby neer depriued of her life: so that at the last she fell into a swoound upon the cold earth, as if she had yielded up the Ghost. In this extasse, leaue we her, and now proceed to the other Child, which she left under the Tree:

It happened the same day, that her Brother King Pepin had taken his journey from Paris (accompanied) with diuers great Lords and Barons towards Constantinople, to visite his Sister-Bellysant, and striking through Orleance, hee made such haste, that hee entred into the same Forrest wheras his banished Sister was lately delivered of her Two Children, but knowing nothing what had hapened. Now as the King passed through this Forrest, he espied lying under a tree alone, the other son of Bellysant, which when he saw, he said unto his Attendants: My Lords by the appointment of the Gods, see I have here found a fair encounter, even a Child. By the gods (said the Lords) you say truth, wherby said the King, take it up, and it shall be brought up at my charge, so long as it lieth, and it shall want no manner of Attendance, but be used as it were mine owne. For if it liue untill it comes to mans estate, I will indow it with lands and possessions after the noblest manner: and therewithall, calling unto him one of his Squires, gave him the sole charge thereof, saying to him on this manner: Hold thee, bear thou this Infant to Orleance, see it baptized, provide a good Nurse for it, and let it want nothing appertaining thereunto: the King little suspecting that this Child was his Nephew.

The

The Esquire, did as the King had before commanded him, bore the Child to Orleance, caused it to be baptized, and gave it his owne name called Valentine. After, he sought out a Nurse for the Child, & gave it great attendance according to the Kings command.

This done, the King proceeded on his journey toward Constantinople, to see his lobely and beauteous Sister Bellysant, but ere he could passe through the Forrest, he chanced to meet with Blandiman, accompanied with a Woman that he had gotten to accompany his Lady in her greatest extremitie of Child-birth, Blandiman spying the King, knew him, and suddenly alighted from his Horse, doing his duty unto him. The King perceiuing it to be Blandiman, asked what good newes from Constantinople and aboue the rest how doth our Sister Bellysant? Blandiman answered, most gracious Soberaign, I bring you but litle tidings, yet those I bring, are bitter and sharpe: For (amongst the rest) I must tell you strange newes of your lobing Sister and how she fares. Wherefore so it is that by forged Treason, and false suggestion of the cursed Arch Priest of Constantinople, your sister is banished out of the Emperors Court and Dominions, and but for the great mercy of the Lords of the Emperours Court, and others, shee had been publickly put to death and burnt to ashes, in the sight of all the people.

King Pepin having heard the lamentable relation of Blandimans report, being exceeding out-ragious and fierce in anger (and yet sorrowfull withall) burst out in speech most bitterly against her on this manner: Now by the Gods quoth he I hold the Emperoz no upright Judge, in that he spared the life of my Sister: for I sweare, that if I had her here now in my possession I would not rest, till by death I have made her an example unto all false Ladies while the world indureth: and therewithall, commanded all his Train of Lords and others to stay their journey going forward and make their returne backe againe to Paris, for the grieuous offences of my Sister here stapes my journey, and so he departed, without further asking any more questions, but turning his horse head, sorrow over-came his courage, and at the last made him breake forth into these words. Ha (quoth he) how many men are deceived in Women: Now am I utterly prebented of all my
pur.

purposes, for my only hope rested in the modesty of my Sister Belysant, yea, and in her stood all my hopes and pleasure. Again, to have had the Emperour Alexander still my Brother, and fast friend at all assages, and in all my necessities, was my only hope and joy of heart, and now behold by her I am dis-appointed, defamed, and shut out into eternall dishonour. And so in that distrust and melancholy, King Pepin returned again towards Orleance. When Blandiman perceived the courage of the King to be thus daunted, he durst relate no further news of his Lady Ballysant, but leading the King, took his way towards the tree, where he lately left her in great pain of Child-birth: being come thither, he sought her every where, but could here no tidings of her: wherefore being sorrowfull, he knew not what way to take.

Being in this extasie, at last he tide up his horse to a thorny tree and began again to make a narrower search then before, wherein he was so bigilant, that anon he espied her, finding her flat upon the earth, in a manner speechlesse, for very grief of heart, that she had lost her Child, which the Bear had violently borne away from her. Blandiman being glad, that now at last he had found her, kindly embraced her, and taking her up in his arms from the cold earth, set her upon her feet, and began thus unto her: Alas (deare Lady and Distresse) how happened you to stray thus far from the place I left you in?

The Lady looking upon him with a gasping countenance, replied thus: Ah Blandiman, my dolours and distresses daily increase upon mee. For thou wert no sooner departed, to get mee the helpe of some woman kinde, but I being delibered of Two Babes, a ravenous Bear from forth the Forrest assailed me, and bare away one of them. I, although weak, making what poore shift I was able, followed that ravenous beast, thinking by strong hand to have recovered again my losse, but all in vaine, I could not overtake the Beate, nor, wanting my strength, recover back again to the Tree, where I left my other Infant. Lady (quoth he) the other Infant? why I my self but lately came from the Tree, and I am well assured that there lay no Infant there, nor nearly thereabout. Now (quoth the Lady) no Child under the Tree. With these words she was so inwardly wounded, that she fell doone in

a swoound, which Blandiman espying, saved her (in what he could) and fell into brynish tears for grief and sorrow, to see his Lady so extreainly plunged and overtwhelmed, and at last led her toward the Tree, where she had left her Child, but when she saw that other Child also gone, thinke then what dolour of heart the poore Lady indured: in midst of all which sorrows, shee thus bespake:

Alas (quoth shee) can there bee in the world a more desolate wretch, on ebery side compassed with griefe, pea, and all insupportable sorrows: but alas Emperour, thou art the cause, and hast been the onely meanes to deliber mee even to Death, and that wrongfully without cause on my part, and onely by deceitbeable counsell hast thou bereft me of thy Company: But heere I call all the gods to witnesse, that I was neber faulty to thee in my body, nor disobedient unto thee in any point: wherefore once againe I am forced to cry out for vengeance upon the offenders head, whosoever. First, for my disgrace, next, for my Banishment, and now lastly for the losse of my two Babes, issued from the blood-Royall of the Emperour of Constantinople. But seeing all these miseries have eben tyed themselves upon my very heart. Come Death and finish what sorrows doe but prolong. All this while Blandiman was an ear-witnesse of all these pitious plaints, insomuch as he grew eben weary of her wailing, and in the best manner he could, comforted her dying Spirits, by falling to intreat her, that shee would somewhat gibe ober her moanes, and betake her self to her feet: Whereunto shee gibing consent, he accompanied with the Woman he had brought with him, came unto a neighbouring Village, wheras they lodged and nourished her till she had something recovered her strength, and in some measure forgotten the depth of her miseries. Blandiman began to bresake with his Lady on this manner: Lady (quoth he) it was my chance in looking you in the woods, to light upon your Brother, King Pepin, who demanded of mee what tidings: but his browes were bent and full of anger against you: wherefore Lady, my counsell is, that you make not towards him, for by that countenance I well perceibe you shall have but slender welcome. For upon further questions demanded and answered, so soon as hee heard mee tell that

that the Emperour had exiled you, he lightly gave credit that his was the fault, and therefore he layes all the blame on you. Ah, (quoth the Lady) now what I most feared is come to passe, and I well perceibe that I am beset with aduersaries on ebery side. Well be it as it may be, the Emperoz hath exiled me without cause, what then shall I doe? I will neuer retorne again to Paris but take my way into some remote Land, where my body with my faults shall be smothered: For my Brothers anger is growen so great, that he could willingly deliuer me over to death, therefore it is better to flie and so to save my life, then fall into the fury of so angry a Brother. This dolefull speech she delibered in teares, which Blandiman perceibing, sayd unto her: Lady leaue off your teares, for be you assured of my faithfull service, and here I offer my selfe, life, and all to be at your dispose, goe whither you please. Why then (quoth the Lady) since thou art so resolute, let us resolve upon some strange adventure, and therewith: I passed forth to expose themselves to future dangers, where now we shall be forced to leaue them with sorrowfull hearts, and return again to speake something of the Beare that carried away one of the Childzen.



CHAP. VI.

Of the Beare that bare away one the Ladies Children.



THE Beare (as you have heard before) that had carryed away one of the Childzen, all this while had offered it no violence, but bare it unto her Cate, which was darke and obscure. In this Cate the Did Beare had foure young ones, amongst whom shee layd the Child to bee deboured, but marke the chance and you shall find it at last miraculous, for all this while the young Beares did it no harme, but with their rough pawes stroaked it softly. The old Beare perceibing thep



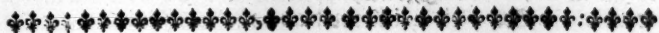
they did not devour it, shewed a Bearish kind of favour toward it, insomuch that she kept it, and gave it sucke among her young ones the space of one whole yeare. This Child by reason of nutriment it receibed from the Beare, became rough all over like a beast, and as he grew in strength, began to range up and downe in the woods, and when he met with other beasts would smite them and got sub mastery over them, that they began to shun the place wherein he came, hee was so extreame fierce amongst them: and in this beast-like Estate passed he the Tearme of fiftene yeares, growing up to sub strength, that scarce any man or beast in the Forrest durst stirre abroad fearing to fall into his hands, lest he should put them to death, and after ate their flesh more like unto a ravenous beast, then any humane Creature. His name was called Orson, because a Beare had ben his nurse, and also rough like a Beare.

This Beare-man liued so long in the Forrest that none (were he neuer so hardy) durst abide his presence. The renown of this wild-man grew so great, and spread so farre abroad ober all the Realme of France, that they of the Country round about chased and hunted him, but prebailed not, for he neither feared weapons nor Engines, but passed through all, snapping them in peeces: All this time he abode in the Forrest, you must understand, he neither wore Garment, nor had any kind of speech.

Here we leaue the wild-man in the Forrest, and looke a little what became of the Lady Bellysant, and her serbant Blandiman, and we shall suddenly find them wandring and trabelling through diuers Lands and Countries, the Lady euer remembryng and bewailing the losse of her two Childzen, wishing that if it were possible, they might be still in safety: But in the midst of her sorrowfull wishes, yet she passed on her weary Journey, sometime by Sea, sometime by Land, till at length she came to a Port in Portugall, on the which did stand an invincible Castle, kept by a Gyant called Farragus, so great and of such puissance, that there was not a Horse to be found could bear the liuing Trunk of this great Gyant.

It so happened at this Castle, that ebery ship that passed by this Port, was to pay tribute to this Gyant, which he himselve did daily come aboard to receiue. At length he came into the ship wherein the Lady Bellysant, and her Squior had passed (for she was laden with all manner of rich Marchandizes) so casting his eyes about he espied Bellysant, which he kindly tooke by the hand, and led her into the Castle to his wife (for he was married to a beautifull Lady) Blandiman followed his Lady also, fearing the Gyant but he behabed himself so nobly, that he did not offer her any violence but presented her to his wife who receiued her gladly, and had great Joy at the gracious presence of so beautifull a Lady. The Gyant gave charge to his wife, to use her honourably, and Blandiman her Squior. During her abode in the Castle, she would often shed teares, when she bethought her of the losse of her two Childzen, which the Lady of the Castle perceiuing, would often comfort her in the best manner shee could, and euer placed her next her olone person, for the joy and pleasure that she euer tooke in

in her company. Within this Castle she tarried some long time, and here we must leaue her, and now we will returne backe againe to tell you somewhat of the Emperour of Constantinople, and the false Arch-Priest.



C H A P. VII.

How by the Counsell of the Arch-Priest, new customes and Taxations were raised throughout the City of *Constantinople*, and how the Treason came to light.



Alexander the Emperour, habing shamefully expelled Belysant his Wife, Sister to King Pepin, oftentimes repented him of the fact: but by the cursed counsell of the Arch-Priest, unto whose words the Emperour gave such credit continually, that what he spake was an Oracle in the eares of the said Emperour, Insonmuch as hee continually heaped new honours upon that traiterous Priest, aduancing him eben aboue the highest of his Empire, and whatsoeuer he commanded, was effected. At last, habing gotten all power and authority into his hands, he began to inhanse the customes and taxes of the City of Constantinople, which exaction of his against all reason, stroke eben to the very hearts of the Inhabitants. Among the residue of these his forced impositions, it happened that (according to their yearly customes) there were held a great Mart in the City, which falls out about the month of September. Whereunto resorted many people for diuers occasions, especiall Marchants. The faire or Mart day being come, the Emperour gave the charge thereof unto his Arch-Priest, who accordingly provided himselfe, and to the same purpose armed 200 men to guard his person: being thus accompanied, hee tooke his way into the City, to effect this new charge which the Emperour had so lately bestowed upon him. It chanced so, that among the rest of them that sold wares, the Marchant was there present, (of whom you haue read before)

namely, that Marchant that came riding by the way whilst Blaudiman (the Ladies Esquier) and the Arch-Priest were fighting: The Arch-Priest perceived him well enough, but would take no knowledge of him, for he was very fearefull least all his villany should now come to light. The presence of this Marchant, much troubled the Arch-Priest, insomuch as he wished (if it were possible) his death, and would assuredly have effected the same by the authority that he now had in his hand, but still he feared some great tumult would arise thereby. Now marke what followed: This Marchant among the rest, was richly furnished with all rich and costly wares, as Cloath of Gold, Silver, Silke, &c. whereby he received great wealth, and took more money then any fife Marchants beside. The Faire being ended, the Arch-Priest sent forth his Officers, to demand and receive the accustomed duties due upon the sale of those Marchandizes. The Officers came unto this Marchant and said: Sie you must pay ten pence on every pound that you have taken, for so it is ordained by the great Officer to whom it doth belong.

The Marchant hereat being angry, said, Cursed be that disloyall Arch-Priest, for he is the only cause of these new raised exactions upon us: It had been good for all men, if he had long since had his desert, and with shame and infamy had ended his dayes, At which reproachfull words against the Arch-Priest, the Officer took his staffe and smote the Marchant on the head, that presently the blood gushed out. Then the Marchant feeling the blood about his eares, drew his sword, and stroke so hard upon the Officer, that he laid him at his feet for dead. Upon this, arose a great rout throughout the Faire, insomuch as the rest of the Officers coming up to helpe their fellow, took the Marchant and brought him before the Arch-Priest. The Arch-Priest glad of this opportunity, would suddenly have put him to death, but the Marchant appealed to Justice, to have his cause tryed by the Law. The Arch-Priest fearing the people, sent him away to the Emperoz, for nothing could satisfie him but his life: But marke, in seeking the life of the Marchant, hee purchased his owne death, as hereafter followeth.

The Arch-Priest caused the Marchant to bee brought into the Em-

Emperours Palace, whereas he in person sat as Judge: The Emperoz being set, the Arch-Priest brought in his Advocate to plead his cause, which was to this effect, that the Merchant had committed murder, and also spoken many approbrious words against the said Arch-Priest. The Advocate having ended his accusation, the Merchant suddenly fell on his knees before the Emperour, and said: Mighty and most Excellent Prince, out of your benignity give me but audience to be heard, before these your Nobles here attending, and I shall unfold a matter of so great importance, that it touches even your person in the highest degree of Treason. Say on said the Emperoz, Mighty Emperoz, and my Lords all, I would advise you to make fast the Gates round about this your Palace, that none depart from this place. The Emperoz did as he requested: Then said the Merchant with a loud voyce, Lords, Barons, and Knights, all you that love the honour of the Emperoz, and the Triumphant reigne of his person, attend my words: For the time is come, that the Treason of the cursed Arch-Priest will now be revealed and come to light. Then thus great Emperoz, this is that cursed man whom you have ever nourished and brought to great honour, who hath deceived your trust, for he it is that hath wrought all the discord betwixt you and your vertuous Lady whom you have banished both from your Bed, Court, and Country, and by whom you have received more dishonour, then ever he reaped honour from you: For it had been his part most of any, to have nourished and advanced your renouwe, and to have preserved your honour, But contrariwise he hath made my Dread Lord infamous by these his wicked projects, and brought upon you great scandal among all Nations: for he secretly and under-hand made love to your Emperesse, but she denyed him: the which he perceiving, that there were no likelihood to accomplish his desire, it drove him into a thousand feares, lest this his dishonour should come to light: and therefore devised to falsifie unto your eares, her faithfull love unto your Bed. Of all which his false accusations, I say here before you and all your Lords and Barons that he speaketh like a Traytor, and for the more approbation of what I have uttered, I will here unfold the truth of what these eyes of mine were witnesses.

It so happened on a day (after the banishment of the Emperesse Bellyfant) as I was riding about my affaires, I chanced to trauell through a wood: at last, passing along the way, I found this treacherous Priest, transformed out of the habit of his Priesthood, into the shape of a knight, eben armed at all points ready for the combate with the enemy. Drawing neerer and neerer, I might behold him in fight with another man unarmed, which at last I found to be Blandiman, Squier to the banished Lady, who conducted her in the time of her exile.

I still perceiuing they encountred one another so fiercely, began, to call out unto them, to giue ower this direfull fight: but they little regarding what I said, I did perceiue the Lady pitiously weeping, and at last said unto me thus: Gentle Marchant, and kind friend, lend me thy aid against this treacherous Arch-Priest, that seeketh by force to rob me of mine honour. This is he, and only he, by whom I am banished from my Emperors Bed and Country. With that I put spurs to my Horse, and ran between them to separate them, which this Arch-Priest perceiuing, suddenly fled into the wood, being fully assured that I had knowledge who he was. Noble Emperoz, it had been my part to haue revealed this long before, but I durst not open my mouth unto you for feare his greatnesse would haue out-shawed my truth, and so haue brought my selfe to an untimely death.

The Emperoz habing heard this tale, sighed, and at last fell into teares: in which teares he turned him unto the Arch-Priest, rating his disloyalty on this manner: Ha thou false seruant (quoth he) haue I euer studied to doe thee honour, and exalt thee to high Dignities, and hast thou quitted all my love and trust with disloyalty and treasons? Well, I haue seen now what I euer mistrusted, Thou hast made me of all men the most unhappy, But it is not so much thy fault as my owne, thy Treason hath bewitched me. In an ebill houre gave I credit to thy false speaking tongue, and thereby deserue to carry the brand of my owne folly.

The Arch-Priest hearing the Emperoz thus distempered, began to intreate his Highnesse not to be so impatient, neither to giue credit to this vnderous tale that the Marchant had commenced against him: for (quoth he) he helpeth me, & I am no way guilty of that

that wherewith he accuseth me, Thou Iest falsely (quoth the Marchant) thou canst not excuse thyselfe in what I habe charged thee withall, and if thou stand still to the dengall. I challenge thee by single Combate, to maintain the truth, and try my quarrell: and hereupon, I throw down my gage, and withall tender my body thereunto, for to make good what I habe here spoken: and more then that ere night shut in, I will deliver thy body to death, or yeld my selfe banquished.

The Emperoz seeing the Marchant so resolute, and to stand to the tryal of the Combate, he said: Arch-Priest, it is time, that either thou quit thy selfe by answering this Challenge, or to yeld thy selfe guilty of what hath been laid to thy charge. The Arch-Priest replied on this manner: Mighty Emperoz, I must let you understand, that to answer the Marchants Challenge, or to take up Armes is contrary to my place or calling, for I am a sacred Prelate of the Church, and therefore I may refuse to fight. Nay (quoth the Emperoz) in this case no excuse is to be admitted, but you must either fight, or yeld your selfe a Traytor to our Crowne and dignity. At these words the Arch-Priest was something troubled in mind, yet at last he was faine to accept the Combate because the Emperoz charged him so deeply: and besides, he could have no excuse admitted. So the Emperoz commanded them both to safe keeping, till such time he had sent Letters to King Pepin of France: but in conclusion the Traytor had his desert as hereafter followeth.



CHAP. VI.

How the Emperour by the Counsell of his Nobility sent for King Pepin to see the Combate fought, between the Arch-Priest, and the Marchant.



That day of the Combate was appointed, and the Field prepared, tidings came unto the Emperoz, that King Pepin was come to Rome, to the aide of the Pope against the Infidels. The Emperoz hearing

ing thereof, by the grabe Counsell of the Lords, dispatched Ambassadors thither, with commend to bring King Pepin to Constantinople, meaning thereby to make him an ele witnesse of these contentions, and of the cause of this Combate, which was to try the Arch-Priest a traytor, and also to hold the Emperour excused in that he had by his false accusations banished his Emperesse. The Ambassadors thus dispatched, you must imagine, that after long travell, at last they came to Rome whereas they found King Pepin, as befoze was told them. King Pepin having heard of their comming, gave them entertainment appertaining to their severall degrees: all which being done the Ambassadors thus spake unto King Pepin. Great Lord, we present these Letters from Alexander thy Brother, Emperour of Constantinople, our Lord and Master, of which we intreat a speedy answer. King Pepin took the letters graciously and read them: and having thoroughly considered the contents, with a loud voyce he said my Lords (by the Gods) here is much matter of tydings and also of as great admiration. The Emperour Alexander greetes me well, and sends me word that my Sister Belysant his betrothed wife, hath been by him wrongfully banished, and that by reason of a false Arch-Priest, unto whom he had given too much trust: which Priest for these his treasonable facts is accused by a Merchant, and for tryall of the truth of this his accusation, will put himselfe in jeopardy of life, by single combate in open field body to body, with this treacherous Arch-Priest. Now it is so fallen out, that the day and place is ready for the tryal of this fact, whereby I shall be fully satisfied whither my Sister hath been guilty of that wherewith she hath been charged, and most shamefully cast forth into banishment Upon all which I vowe by my Crowne and Dignity, that if the Emperour be found to have offered her this indignity without just cause, that I will be avenged against him in the extreamest manner that warre shall thunder forth against him. Having ended his speech unto his Lords in the presence of the Ambassadors, he commanded that with speed every man should addresse himselfe to accompany him to Constantinople, to behold the manner of this fight between the Merchant and the Arch-Priest.

The day of his departure from Rome being come, he takes his way

way toward Constantinople, where after some few days of travel, he safely arrived. The Emperour hearing of his coming, commanded all the Bells to be rung, and made Triumphs to welcome him, for all were filled with joy at his approach. The Emperour mounted on Horse-backe richly accompanied, marched out of the City to meet his Brother King. At last they met, but the Emperour overcome with sorrow and tears at the remembrance of Bellysant, could not utter a word. On the other side, Pepin being fiercely angered, at what hapned to his Sister, gave no respect unto the Emperours teares, but proudly began to gird him on this manner. Emperour (quoth he) leave off these your lamentations, and shake off these weeds of sorrow that you seem to wear for my sister Bellysant: For he that hath a Harlot unto his wife, I account him mad to grieve at her mis-behaviour: and since my sister hath proved such a one, let her goe and take care for her selfe, she is not worthy of so much as one teare from such an eye of Majesty.

Nay, nay, said the Emperour, speake not you so evilly against your sister, for I am now fully perswaded, that she is composed of all vertue and true honesty, and that against all equity, I have banished her out of my Country. Think you so now (quoth King Pepin:) Then thou art worthy of a double shame, and you do bewray unto the world your weaknesse, & what great foolishnesse remained in you, when as by the report of one man, and that a Traitor too, you would with such rigour proceed against an innocent Lady and so suddenly (like a common harlot) throw her out into banishment, shame and dishonour, being of the blood Royall of France. The Emperour hearing the King to be so bitter against him, he was very sorrowfull and said unto him in this manner: Alas (my Lord) do not thus follow me in wrath and anger, but rather turne your tongue upon some milder saying: for to that intent have I sent for you that your owne eyes may be a witnessse of the truth. This true (quoth King Pepin) but it is all too late what now you say, for you have delibered over my sister into the worlds Infamy, and that more is, even to banishment, and (for ought I know) to death it selfe, for I know not whither I shall ever behold her face againe or not. Fie, fie, that you being so great a Person, should bee so affectionately boyn away, to give such sudden judgment against an

Innocent, I do confesse, one may commit a foule and dishonorable act, but repentance is able to make amends, and not so suddenly to overthrow their dignity and renowne: For that once lost, whether it be by right or wrong, it is never againe possible to be recovered. Again, how little have you esteemed of the honour of my kingly office, Judge you, when first without deliberation, and next without any knowledge given mee, you have proceeded to against my Sister, makes it plaine against you, that eny wrongs her and me, was the only cause of these false and unjust wrongs done against us. Whilst these words passed betwixt them, they were now entred Constantinople, to where with great joy and gladnesse they were receibed of the Inhabitants. The Emperoz would have had King Pepin to have lodged with him in his Pallace, but the King denied and caused his Traine to lodge within the City, and he himselfe also. Then the Emperoz caused many gifts and presents to be offered him, but he disdainfully rejected them: for King Pepin thought of nothing but the dishonour done unto his Sister, and the rather, for that the whole City accounted her the fairest, the most vertuous, and the chafest Lady in all the world, and that by injustice and treason she was so banished.



CHAP. IX.

How the Marchant and the Arch-Priest encountred at the place appointed, about the clearing of the Lady Bellysant, and what a glorious victory did betide the Marchant.



Now was the day appointed come for the combat betwixt the Arch-Priest & the Marchant: wherefore every thing was made in readines, according to the command of the Emperoz. At last, there came both the Combatants into the field, & presented themselves before the Emperoz. Being both before the Emperoz, the Attendants, (Knights and others) upon the Arch-Priest, armed in a most sumptuous Armour of Plate, all imbroid with Gold and Pearle,

Pearle, which made such a glittering shew, that it then dazzled the eyes of the beholders. Being thus richly armed the Arch-Priest came forth into the field, and tooke his place appointed him, at the one end of the List, appointed for that purpose. The Emperoz, beholding the glorious shew that the Arch-Priest made in his arms, called forth the Marchant, causing him first to kneel down and in the presence of the Assembly dubbed him Knight: Then commanded he, that a most rich Armoz should be put upon him in the presence of the Emperoz, who during the time he was arming, promised unto this Marchant, if he over-came the Arch-Priest, to advance him to great livings, and high authority. These two adversaries being now in readinesse, and each having his blazon about his necke their Horses were brought forth and they proudly mounted, ready to give battell: the Emperoz gave straight charge unto all his Officers of Armes to have a speciall eye unto the Arch-Priest for feare least he on the sudden should flye the field, or run away from them, as they would answer it with their lives. The Marchant thus mounted, & his sword girt to him, first entered the Lists, after whom issued such abundance of people, that they were numberlesse. Then after came the Arch-Priest, sumptuously accompanied with Nobles and Knights of great honour and dignity. The Combatants thus both entered the Lists, ready to charge one the other: King Pepin was there in person, called out aloud unto the Marchant, saying unto him: My friend, the Gods give thee victory against this false traytor. I bote unto thee here before this great Assembly (so I may but find out the truth of my Sister Bellysant) notwithstanding the great advancement that the Emperoz hath promised, to take thee into France, and make thee companion with the best in my Kingdom. The Marchant gave the King great thanks, and said: Dread King, I doubt not but this night to make this traitterous Priest confesse that he hath treacherously fought the destruction of your Sister. Then came a Herald administering to them both an oath, and so clearing the Lists left the Champions to their fortunes.

Now are both the Combatants ready to set forth, and the Marshalls of the field brought each of them a Speare, which they no sooner had received, but they put Spurs to their Horses, and ran



with such violence together, that their Speares were broken to their hands. When they began to set forward to another course charging each other with their Swords, in such violent manner, that with their fury they rebounded from their armor to the ground cutting off whole quarters of their Corsets, and left them as a prey for those that attended the fight.

The Arch-Priest seeing himselfe so stiffely matched gave over the fight, till towards the Evening (for such was the Custome of the Country, that in any challenged Combate, either party might refuse to followe the fight so eagerly, but that they might have a breathing time, so the Combate were yielded vanquished before Sun-set, or else abide the Sentence of death) thinking thereby to weary out the Merchant. Which the Merchant being privy unto, so behaved himselfe, that hee prepared to receive the Arch-Priest courageously when he encountered him : inasmuch that when they came together to make tryall of their haloz, and to get conquest the

the one ober the other: the Marchant so redoubled his stroakes, that at last he smote off one of his eares, and his Steele Habergeon, and with the violence of the same blow, the Marchants Sword fell from his hand. The Arch-Priest perceiving his enemy unarmed, he put spurs to his Horse and charged him with such violence that he ranne against the Marchants Horse, and thrust out one of his eyes, the Horse feeling himselfe hurt ran up and down as mad, leaping and curbetting so furiously, that he unhorsed his rider, and so hard was the fortune of the Marchant, that in his fall, his foot hung fast in the stirrop whereby he was brought into great danger, the Horse hurrying him along the field, that all were very sorrowfull to behold this lamentable spectacle, and with the amazement thereof, grew desperate in their hopes. King Pepin also was sore discouraged at this disastrous chance, that the teares did even trickle downe his cheekes, and in a silent speech to himselfe thus he spake. Alas Marchant I now well perceive thy days are at an end, and that the trust I reposed in thee is utterly frustrate, for by thy fall I see my Sisters chastity to be weake, and the rather, for that the Gods have suffered thee to fall so unluckily this day, so that I must needs confesse, that the Emperour hath done well in expelling her his kingdom: Oh, that her day of birth had proved her day of buriall, it had been happy for her, but thrice happier to me, for onely by her is the blood-Royall of France brought into great infamy: and were it so I had her at my dispose, I would be the first man should see execution done upon her, even to death: Now that which was so miraculous, was, that all this time that the Marchant was dragged up and down the field, the Arch-Priest could not enforce his Horse to come in upon the Marchant, but fled out too and fro whereby hee could not make prey upon the Marchant, as he thought to have done. But see at last the Marchants Horse that had thus drawne him up and downe the field foundred and fell down, which gave great advantage to the Marchant, and with that fall got his leg from forth the stirrop, and at last got up on his feet, like a haliant and hardy Champion. The Arch-Priest perceiving the Marchant had recovered his legges came running with strong violence upon him, and thereby sent him fife or sixe sore blowes upon the head and shoulders, that the

poore Marchant was eben astonied. At last, he was forced to gibe backe to recober breath, which eben a little space, and finding himself somewhat reliebed, he subtilly and fiercely gabe a fresh assault upon the Arch-Priest, against whom he strooke with such violence that the sword fel out of his hand, but he had first so wounded the Arch-Priest that the Blood ran quite through his Armo^r upon the earth. This so beyed the Arch-Priest that he grew mad with rage, and turned his Horse upon the Marchant, minding to have overrun him with his Horse. But the Marchant perceibing his drier, prepared to receibe him, and therewithall drew a long knife, and panced it into the belly of the Horse, so that the Horse being thus wounded, began to sting and leape, insomuch as the Arch-Priest was in danger to be unhorsed, & doing what he could to save himselfe, he lost his Sheld. The Marchant espying him thus unarmed, ran hastily and caught up the shield, and threw it away, so that he could no moze recober it: that done he made againe towards his Horse and smote him into the Belly with his Sword, so that by this time, both his horse and his rider, came tumbling downe upon the ground.

The Arch-Priest being thus unhorsed, was very nimble to recober himselfe, but yet the Marchant watching all opportunity, lent him such a blow, that as he began to rise, he laid him flat again upon the ground, and then leaping upon him, pulled off his Helmet, thinking to have smitten off his head, when the Arch-Priest saw himselfe thus banquished, he was exceeding wroth, but seeing little abailed he said thus unto the Marchant: Alas, my Friend, I beseech thee take mercy upon me, and while I am yet libing, gibe me some time to confesse my selfe, that I may free my Soule of danger, for to thee I yield my selfe as banquished. The Marchant hearing him say so, was very courteous, and granted him his desire. The Priest had no sooner gotten on his feet but he forsooke his confession, and suddenly got the Marchant in his armes, and threw him on the ground, and leapt upon him in most sudden outrage, saying thus to the Marchant I have thee now at advantage, and from my hands thou shalt not escape with life, if what I shall command thee thou doe not effect. Ha, replied the Marchant, hast thou thus betrayed me. Well, it is so that now I stand

stand at thy mercy, and that thou maist do with me what pleaseth thee: therefore let me know what it is thou commandest, and so thou save my life, I shall gladly do it. Then thus: go with me before the Emperour and King Pepin, and there openly in the hearing of all men, testifie, that thou falsely had accused me, and that thereby I may bee cleared of all those false calumniationes, which by thy meanes hath been brought upon me: all which if thou effectually accomplish, I sweare and promise thee to save thy life, and besides be a means unto the Emperoz and his Brother, to buy thy peace & forgiveness of this thy soule fact committed both against me and them also. Nay more, I sweare to thee by the faith of a Gentleman, and by the order of a Priest-hood, to give thee a Piece of mine in marriage, who shall be unto thee, rich, faire, and of pleasant behaviour: and to conclude, thou shalt say more then any of thy kindred ever could, thou shalt be made both more honourable and wealthy: Therefore now advise thy selfe, whether thou wilt be made happy in an honourable life, or miserable in an untimely Death. The Merchant having heard the Arch-Priests tale, was upon the suddaine exceeding sorrowfull and not without cause, but not knowing on the sudden what to resolve upon, he at length thus answered. Sir Priest your Arguments are grounded upon good reasons, therefore I am ready to accomplish your desires, so that you will be as mindfull of your oathes and promises. In me quoth the Arch-Priest there shall appeare no fault. Why then (quoth the Merchant) let us set forward toward the Emperour and there will I set you free from all those accusations which heretofore I have exhibited against you. It is well said (se the Arch-Priest wherefore rise up then, and let us go together. The Merchant had no sooner got on his feet, but he began again afresh to open all the Treason of the Arch-Priest, even to his teeth, and againe hee tooke courage, and now would requite him in the same sort hee had serbed him before: and suddenly clasping the Arch-Priest in his Armes, hee threw him down, and having him at advantage, he said thus: Arch-Priest you have taught me to play my part, and therefore thinke no more upon confessions, for you shall confesse to me or none. The Arch-Priest seeing himselfe beaten at his own weapon, began again to intreate, but the

the Merchant not regarding his wounds, presently put out his eyes; And gave him so many deadly blowes, that he made him sure enough for rising to doe him any harme.

Then the Merchant called the Marshalls of the field, and said, Lo, here you may see, that I have don my best endeavour against the Arch-Priest, and if he be banquished say so, for I am sure I have brought him to that passe: that I may kill him out-right if I please. Wherefore my request now unto you is, that you would conduct Alexander the Emperoz of Constantinople, and Pepin King of France hither to this place, accompanied with their worthy Lords and Knights, that they may be eare-witnesses of the Confession which this Arch-Priest shall make unto them, and also to hear in what unjust manner he waged this combat against me.

The Marshalls did according to the request of the Merchant; and then presently came King Alexander the Emperoz, with King Pepin, and all their Nobles, even to the place where the Arch-Priest lay all sorrowfull and fully banquished. Then the Emperoz demanded of him the truth of the matter, which the Arch-Priest confessed, declaring the whole plot of his villanies, & how by this means the Lady Belysant had been wrongfully banished. When the standers by heard all the whole matter, a multitude of teares were shed on every side, but especially the Emperour, for his lamentations were so violent, that all that were about him wept with great bitternesse and hearty sorrow. Now, if the Emperoz were so sorrowful what may you think of King Pepin her brother, alas it was not without great cause when they saw and knew that by too much trust given to a treacherous Priest, they had lost the vertuous Lady Belysant. Betwixen these two great Princes there was great joy and great sorrow: Joy to King Pepin that his Sister was found Innocent and blamelesse: Sorrow to the Emperoz that he should be the only means (by false suggestions) of his wifes banishment.

At last lamentations were laid apart: when they had heard all the confession of the Arch-Priests Treasons, the Emperoz consulted with his counsel what death the Traytor should be put unto, a Caldron of hot burning Oyle, quick, and so finish his miserable days, as he had Traiterously sought the life of that Innocent Lady:

by : So the execution was suddenly to be done, and it being done, the assembly of people of all sorts was dismissed.

Afterward King Pepin withdrew himself towards his lodging but the Emperoz forgotfull, for what had happened, came before King Pepin, and humbling himselfe at his feet, began thus to say. Alas dear Brother I am all forgotfull for this my error, in that I have so rashly committed such a detestable crime against you, my Lady your Sister, and the residue of these great Nobles your attendants. Let it suffice, that I behold my own folly, what shall I say : I can but crave pardon for my fault, and give my selfe into your hands, and do to me what ever pleaseth you: and for a further satisfaction, I render up into your hands my Empire, with all the Regality thereunto appertaining: for I am altogether unworthy to rule an Empire, that am not Master of mine own affections. Take it I said, for I will no longer be served, but during the rest of my life will become a Servant to thee or any: for no better have I deserved, King Pepin perceibing the Emperoz so passionate, & so humble minded, kindly took him from the ground, and before all his Lords freely forgave all trespasses. So that before they parted, there was a generall peace concluded on both parties between them, and a most speedy course taken to send abroad into all parts of the world to seek out the distressed Lady Bellysant. Thus all things settled in an order, King Pepin prepared to take his leabe of the Emperoz, and so returned back again into his own Country.



CHAP. IX.

How King Pepin returned from Constantinople, into France, and after sayled to Rome, to fight against the Sarazens that had surprized the City.



King Pepin having taken his leabe from Constantinople, (as you have heard) after a long Journey, arrived in France, and so to Orleance, to refresh his long and tired spirits, tossed tow and fro in melancholly,

lambolly and heaby cogitations, for the woefull mishances befalling unto his Suffer Bellyfart. Being thus safely arrived and seated at Orleans, The King was right ioyfull that at the last hee had attained the place hee so much desired, by reason that it was one of the goodliest Forrests in the Realme of France. Being (as I said) come hither, hee caused great Banquets to be made for his welcome home: which was accordingly performed,

In the midst of their Feasting and Rebelling, the Escuier that had the charge of the Wyphant Valentine, took and presented him before the King, saying unto his Majesty, on this manner: Dread Soberaigne, lo, here I present before you, the poore Wyphant that your Majesty found in the Forrest of Orleans, and the same Child which you commanded me to see brought up, not at mine expence Dread Soberaigne, but at your owne. My Leige, the reason why I make tender of him unto you at this time, is, for that he is growing into mans estat, and so it may please your Majesty, it is time to dispose of him as you please. The King having heard the words of this Squier, called this Wyphant (called Valentine) unto him, and took him by the hand, and asked divers questions unto him, all which he answered with much modesty, and great wisdom, and being ravished therewith, commanded that all his Cupbord of Plate should be given unto him. Moreover (said the King) I command that this Wyphant Valentine be dearly preferred & kept, for that you shall perceive I respect him above common love, I will also, that this infant shall be nourished and kept with my Daughter Eglantine, she is both faire, wise, and well endowed with all the richest gifts of Nature.

The King having given this command, it was accordingly accomplished, inso much that they were both under one government of one and the same Suite, and had one and the same attendants, yea, every way they joyned one in the company of the other, in such wise, that if the one was but a little absent from the other, there was a kind of lamentation till they came together again, but especially the Kings Daughter, who pondzing on the prudent carriages of the Wyphant, that she became in love with him, inso much as his absence brought her into a thousand fears, and
dabe

draue her melancholly thoughts into a thousand doubts.

Now Valentine was euer practising himselfe in feats of Arms, as Horse, Armoz, Juts, and Tournaments, still opposing himselfe in all dangers whatsoever. The King wisely beholding the inclination of the youth, allotted unto him what his heart desired, furnished him with Armoz, Horse, Lands, Reuenues, and made him Lord of rich possessions. Being thus furnished, there arose within the Court many secret mutterings, whereby many strected so sore in enuy towards him, that they uttered forth many reproachful words against him, saying, that when he was at the best, he was but a found stray, poore, base, without any knotone Parents or Friends, of no gentle or noble stock, and such like: which when Valentine heard, he could take no other reuenge, but sit him down and weepe: whose teares faire Eglantine perceiuing, would in a tender woman-like affection, accompany him, euen pouring forth her teares also for company.

At length when he saw teares little abailed, he began to forsake it, and taking heart, bear himselfe like a man, amidst the greatest in the Court, carrying himselfe in such humble and gentle frame, that he gained the love of all sorts and degrees, as well Nobles, as Inferiours.

Valentine thus growing up in love of the Court, all this while his Brother Orson runs in the Forrest, all rough and covered with haire like a Beare, and leading the life of a Beast, where we leaue him for a while, and return unto the affaires of King Pepin. It so chanced, that there came unto Orleanse others Ambassadors from the Pope demanding aid against the Sarazens, enemies of the holy faith, who haue taken lately the City of Rome by violence. King Pepin understanding hereof by certaine Letters receiued, addrested himselfe and his powers to make resistance against this common Enemy. And amongst the rest of his worthy followers, he ordained this young Valentine a cheif Commander. Faire Eglantine hearing that Valentin should make one, became wondrous heaby and sorrowfull; for that she loved him more then any other Creature, and secretly by stealth sent a messenger unto him to come and speake with her: and when he came, shee sighing, said unto him: Alas Valentine, my love, now am I quite bereft of all

my ioy, for I perceiue you will betake your selfe to a dangerous Warre. Gentle Iobe, leade mee not so desolate: would to the Gods that I had neither father nor friend in the world to contradict my will, and then shouldst thou soone perceiue, how well my affection stands to thy person: for if wishes might abaike, I swear (by the Gods) thou art the onely man I would ioyne my selfe unto in the bands of Marriage, and then shouldst thou be the King of France and I Queen. The young man hearing her idle imagination, said, Madam leade these womanish dotages, you know I am no person fitting your estate, I am but a found stray that your Father hath caused long time to be nourished for charity sake. I am no way either fitting you, or the meanest Damosell attending your person. Make your choice else-where, and ioyne Royall blood unto yours: and so with all duty I take my leaue, and commend you to the Gods. Having thus ended his speech, away hee goes, leauing the poore Lady all heauy, desolate, and in the midst of mourning,

By this time, the King and all his powers were in a readines to depart, and taking their way from Orleans towards Rome, they went through a mighty Forrest, and being entred, the King called his Lords and Barons together and said thus unto them. My Lords, it is not unknown unto you, that in these woods (as report goeth) there lieth a strange monster, a Wild-man, much feared of passengers, which spectacle of mans shape, I long to behold, befoze I benter out any further upon our intended voyage to Rome. The Lords generally consented, and the chase was suddenly appointed. Being entred the wood, they chased diuers sorts of Wild-beasts and overcame them: but as for Orson the Wild-man, none durst adventure the finding forth of him, save only his brother Valentine (but he knew nothing) and he followed still the chase, hoping at last both to find and to fight with him also. Every way they begirt the Wood, some one way some another: the King himselfe ventured so far, that he came befoze a Cave, darke and obscure, whereas this Wild-man used to hide himself. Orson perceiuing the King, rushed out upon him, caught him within his nayles (the which were long and crooked) and in rough and rabenous manner cast him on the ground. The King thus suddenly surprized

prized by a savage man, neber loekt for life, but in pittious manner cried out for helpe, who was seconded by a balliant knight at Armes, which espying the King to be almost strangled, suddenly drew forth his sword to have run the wile-men through. Orson perceibing the glittering sword, left the King and ran furiously upon the knight, tooke him in his armes that he eberthrew him Horse and all. The Horse soze affrighted, got up againe, in a mad fit ran up and down the Forrest, but as for the rider (though a knight at Armes) Orson held him so fast with his fangs and Actions, that at last he pulled him in peeces. In the meane space the King escaped, and meeting part of his company, related to them the great danger hee had escaped, and the secrefull death of the knight. These tidings much amazed the rest of the company: yet being manfully resolved, they joyned themselves together, and marched towards the Cave to meet with Orson, and either to take him alive, or put him to death in the cave. But being come thither, they found the knight dead and torn in peeces, but Orson they could not find, (for the Gods had reserved him to be conquered only by his Brother Valentine.) of whose proceedings you shall hear more hereafter.

So the King perceibing their labour lost, gave over the chase, and set forward toward Rome. After this, the King ranked his forces into battell ray, and the great Ensign of France was given to one called Myllon Daugler a very balliant Prince, and a wise leader, so that he and his two brethren, Gervays, and Sampson had the whole Comurand of the Forces that then were marching towards Rome.

When they were come unto Rome, King Pepin desired battell, and would faine understand the state that the City now stood in under the conquest of the Sarazens, but it was told him he should not be too inquisitive of those affaires: for the Admirall of the Sarazens had surprized the City, and put multitudes to the sword, and had spoiled and defaced all the Churches, and made them Temples fit for their Heathenish Idols, and he constrained the Pope, with his Cardinals, Arch-bishops, Bishops, Priests, Monks, Fryers, and all the Ecclesiastical persons for to serve at their Heathenish Altars, and to sacrifice to their Debills after the custome of the Heathens.

When King Pepin understood hereof, he was much enraged, to heare that the Christians were thus captivated by Heathens: wherefore he addrest himselfe nearer unto the City, and there having assembled all his forces, he began to draw them into diuers Squadrons, meaning thereby to gibe them a sudden assault, for his fury was so great against these Heathenish Sarazens, that he bound ed rebettge upon them: but taking better aduise, hee rescued himselfe and his Army for a season: what after befell, shall be declared at large, when fit occasion serbeth our purpose.



CHAP. XI.

How King Pepin besiedged Rome, and how *Valemine* Iusted with the Admiral of the *Sarazins*, and slew him, whereby the City was relieved, and won againe from the *Sarazins*

King Pepin being thus come to Rome besiedged it, and after some few daies spent, he called about him his Barons, Knights, and mightie men of warre, and beganne to speake unto them in this manner: My Lords and followers, you well know that this Heathenish Admirall, Enemy to the Christian faith and Church of Rome, hath put many Christians to the Sword, and violently trodden under foot all such as withstood his power: Therefore it is our duties to commiserate their estate that are thus oberthrotone, and to try the fortune of a battell against those Heathenish Pagans: and either dize them out of the City, or leade our dead Carcasses as a prey as many have done before. Wherefore, I King Pepin resting upon this resolution, would faine find out a man to beare unto the proud Admirall; a Letter of defiance in my name. King Pepin having finished his speech, there was none amongst them made him any answer to his request. At length *Valentine* seeing all stand mute, stepped forth before the Emperour, and beganne to speake on this manner: Mightie Soberaign: so you be pleased to gibe me leabe, I shall undertake the

the Message, and shall no whit fear to speak both unto the Pagan Admirall, but to the whole Host of Pagans, were their multitude twice as many as they be, and my return shall make proofe that I have done my Message both with honour and advantage to your Majesty.

The King hearing Valentine thus forward, and of such undoubted and balliant resolution, was right joyfull: and all those of his Princely traine, greatly marvelled at this his magnanimous spirit. Hereupon the king called forth unto him a Secretary willing him to draw a Letter of Defiance, and deliver the same to Valentine. Valentine prepared himselfe thereunto, and no sooner had he received the Letters, but he tooke leave of the King, and all his Traine. And being bravely mounted, he tooke his way towards Rome, and so to the Palace where the Admirall lay. So comming thither he came before the Admirall, and saluted him after this manner: The Gods preferbe the noble and puissant King Pepin, my Lord and Soberaign: and Mahomet whom thou serbest, save and defend the redoubted Admirall. When Valentine had thus spoken, the Admirall raised him from his Chaire, and with a fierce and frowning brow, replied thus unto him, Messenger return, and get thee gon out of my sight, and say thus unto King Pepin: will him either renounce his faith, and beleve on Mahomet, or else let him look to receive no other sentence then death, and so destroy him together with all his Lands and Kingdom. But thee gone, and make here no longer abode, as I say, reply not a word for my heart is all enraged, that so long I suffer thee.

Again I tell thee, that for thy part, thou hast committed a haughty enterprize, thus to enter my Palace, to deliver any such message unto me. Wherefore I assure thee, by the height of my Majesty, if that I did assuredly know that what thou hast done, were through pride of heart and insolency, thereby to make a mocke at our Majesty, thou shouldest never returne to King Pepin, to carry an answer to thy proud Masters Letters. Valentine hearing these hot and furious words sounding from the Admirall began to be afraid: wherefore deliberating with himself what to reply, hee wisely said: High and Mighty Emperour, doe not imagine that by pride or presumption I am come before you; for when

you shall understand the manner of my coming, you will be as-
 tonied therat. Why then (quoth the Admirall) say on, tell us how
 thou art come, for I sweare by Mahomet, I shall take great plea-
 sure in hearing thee relate this Enterprize. When said Valentine
 fir so it is, that I was accused to King Pepin for a Coward, and
 that since I came with him to this war, I would secretly have
 stolne away from the Campe & returned backe again into France.
 For which (great Admirall) the King hath me in great disgrace,
 and bowed the next morning to smite off my head. I percei-
 ving my selfe in this danger, sought rather to save my life, than to
 lose both life and honour, and therefore gave it forth throughout
 the Court, that I would undertake to come to your Court to de-
 fie you on King Pepins behalfe: and therewithall that I would
 Challenge you to break three Spears with you in single combate
 to try your valiancy, and to win unto my selfe that lost honour
 that before I told unto you: wherefore, my request is, that your
 Greatnesse would grant me my request, otherwise I dare never
 return again least the King put me to death. The Admirall hear-
 ing this pittifull yet cunning tale of Valentine, said unto him,
 Son, I do sweare by Mahomet thou shalt not be refused, but at this
 instant I offer thee the Juits, and to the end that those French-
 men that lye in Siedge before this City, may have a sight hereof,
 and see thy valour, I will ordain the place of Juiting to be with-
 out the City. Valentine humbly thanked him, and in token of his
 acceptance and fained love, he fell down and kissed the feet of the
 Admirall. Valentine grew up in great favour in the Admirals
 Court, but yet it often troubled his mind, & he never could under-
 stand who was his Parents: but the while he bestowed his wan-
 dring thoughts hereabout, the Admirall said thus unto him: Fair
 Son, me thinks you are very pensive and sad. This true (quoth
 he) and not without cause: for I am much afraid that I shall
 be slaine in these Juits, wherefore my request is, that I may
 have a Confessor to give me absolution for my sins. Then the Ad-
 mirall commanded that a Priest should be brought unto him. The
 Priest being come, said unto Valentine, How confesse you unto
 mee. Valentine getting the Priest aside, and being together bee-
 said thus unto him: Sir, you are a Christian Priest, and above
 all

all other, you ought most to defend the Christian Faith: wherefore hearken to that I shall tell you, for it is a thing requireth great secreesse. Thus it is, you know that this day I am to fight with the Heathenish Admirall, the greatest enemy of Christian people: now I am well assured, that a great number of the Sarazins will issue forth of the City, to be eye-witnesses of these fights to be held without the wailes of the City, Therefore you shall give warning to all Christians to keepe within the walls, arming themselves in a readines, and closely keep it from the eeres of the Pagans: so when the Pagans are come forth to behold these fights, the Christians suddenly shall surprize the Guards that keepe the Gates and if any mutiny arise, let them keepe out those that are out. And send a Message to King Pepin of what is done, that he with his army may come upon them that are without, while those within are set on by the armed Christians, so begirting them on every side, that in the end we may make such a slaughter on them, that þ Christians may receiue both their City in peace, and their former liberty. So having ended his speech, the Priest departed. Then the Admirall commanded Valentine to be led into his chamber to dine, giving them charge he should be honourably attended at the board. Being set among many Lords, he behaved himself gently & mildly towards all. Dinner being done, the Admirall called unto him a Nephew of his named Salatas, commanding him to see Valentine as well armed at all points as himselfe, and moreover charged his Nephew to deliver unto Valentine the best horse in his Stable. Salatas having received this command from his Uncle the Admirall, tooke Valentine and led him into a faire Hall; being come thither, hee caused to be laid before him divers Armozs, willing him to make choice of the best: Valentine cast his eyes upon them all, and at last appointed the Armoz wherewith he would be armed, and making himselfe ready as fast as he could, he approached down into the utter Court, whereas he was attended with his Horse ready to put his feet into the stirrop. Being come down out of the Hall, he presently mounted his horse, the Admirall issued likewise ready Armed out of his private Pallace. Being thus Armed, they tooke their way towards the chief Gate of the City of Rome, for on that side King Pepin had laid his siege.

When they were both in the field, Valentine hung his Shield about his neck, in which he bare a Hart waby in a field of silver, and on one side of that Hart a Tree, all which did signifie that he was found in a Forrest, and were the same Armes King Pepin bestowed on him. The Champions being entred the Lists, great was the clamor of the French in joy of Valentine, the sound whereof the Pagans hearing, suddenly issued forth of the City to behold these Triumphant Justs. The Friar habing plaid his part among the Christians within the City, presently after the Pagans were gone out to behold these triumphs, addrest himselfe to take possession of the Gates, which habing gotten, there was no entrance againe to be expected. King Pepin being made acquainted with their purpose, prepared all his men of war ready to reliebe Valentine, if necessity required. Habing now all things in readinesse, the houre was at hand that the Justs should begin,



So each of them being prepared for the encounter, they valiantly couched their Speares, and the first course probed so valiant, that their Speares shivered all in splinters: each Combatant perceiving valour to brandish on the top of his Helme, made out a second course, where Valentine got the better, for with his Speare (charged against the breast of the Admirall) he gave him such a strong blow, that he forced his Speare quite through his Body, inso-much as he fell from his Horse starke dead, making a pittifull noise at his departure, wherefore the Pagans ran suddenly upon Valentine and would have killed him. Valentine perceiving their intent, with a resolute courage put Spurs to his Horse, and with his Sword drawn, violently rushed through the thickest of the Pagans, and slew many of them as hee passed through them. King Pepin also with his host came up to the aid of Valentine but he was so hard beset, by the Pagans, that he was smitten from off his Horse, which Valentine espying came up to the rescue of the King, so that he horsed him again.

The King perceiving himselfe delivered out of danger, called unto Valentine, and said. My Child, thou hast saved my life, which if the Gods grant to spare, I will reward thee liberally. By this time the battell grew so hot, that the Pagans were forced to retire to the City: when they came to the gates, the Christians that were in the City issued on them, and placed the Ensignes & Standards of King Pepin on the walls. The Pagans seeing King Pepin's colours displayed on the walls, betook themselves to flight, in chase of whom the Christians followed on so fast, that they shamefully ended their daies. In this battell were slaine M. Pagans, only by the meanes of Valentine, who bare himselfe so valiantly that day, that he was the death of foure Horses at the least. And thus by his prowess, the City was againe restored to the Christians, for which deed, there was great triumph in all Christendome: but especially at Rome, so that all the Inhabitants round about, gave everlasting praise to Pepin King of France, and by the generall applause of the people, he was sacred Emperoz, and crowned by the Pope. King Pepin did many goodly acts in his time, administering Justice to all. And this happened in the time of Pope Clement the Fourth,



C H A P. XII.

How *Hausery* and *Henry* repiaed at the love the King shewed
towards *Valentine*.



KING *Pepin* habing expelled the Pagans out of Rome he took his way back again towards *Orleance*, and being there arriv'd, he was right joyfully welcom'd by *Bertha* his Quēn, with her little son *Charlemaine*, & her fair Daughter *Eglantine*, & their joy appeared so much the more, for that *Valentine* whom she loved so dearly, was again returned home in safety: Being some few daies rested from his weary labours the Lady sends for *Valentine*, who accordingly came unto her: & when she saw him, she saluted him kindly, and with an amorous countenance began thus unto him: *Valentine* you above all the rest, are most welcomest and well ought it to be, for fame hath blotone forth her Trumpe of your Triumphs, and report saies you were the onely Champion that drave the Pagans out of Rome. *Valentine* replied: *Wadams*, I can hinder no man to speake what pleaseth him, but as for my selfe, I have done little deserbing praise, but it hath pleased the King your Father to do me great honour: even so much, as all the daies of my life I am not able to make the least part of recompence. And as hee spake these words, *Hausery* and *Henry* (two men composed all of envy) entred the Chamber of *Eglantine*, and seeing him, began thus to speake. *Valentine*, what have you to do here in the Chamber of our Sister: it is no place for such straglers as you are, this your boldnes is not to be born: no man knowes of whence you are: therefore we advise you to be warned that you attempt not the like again, least you dearly buy these your presumptions. *Valentine* hearing these words, answered: *Wazong mee not*, for I entred not the Chamber of your Sister to her dishonour. What though I be poore, and not known of whence I am, yet am I not so base, as to offer violence unto one descended from the blood

blood of Kings? And further, I promise and sweare; never to come neer her Chamber again: and therewithall departed, leaving the Lady mourning all alone.

Valentine hasted to the pallace to wait upon the King at dinner where was in presence Haufray and Henry and the Duke Million Daugler, who likewise waited upon the King during dinner time. Dinner being finished, the King arose and called to Valentine, & in hearing of all his Nobles, he thus began to say: My Lords here is Valentine that hath well deserved at our hands, and that saved my life when I was in danger: therefore to the end you may take knowledge of his good service towards me, I freely give unto him the Earldome of Clerimont of Avergne, and when I can bestow more upon him, he shall not be forgotten. Valentine gave him many thanks, saying, that he had heaped upon him more honours then he could any way deserve. Haufray & Henry hearing these words, grew greatly male-content, and at last Henry began to talk: with his Brother on this manner: This Fount-fellow I perceibe growes in great favour with the King, and there must bee some course taken to crosse his designes, or else our overthrow will shortly follow upon it. For (quoth he) you know well that the King hath no Sons but two, and one little one (named Charlemain) which if our Father die, may by our furtherance quickly be set beside the Kingdome. Againe, it is greatly to be feared that this Valentine will support and uphold him against us, therefore Brother I thinke it good to frame some plot against him, to bring him in displeasure with the King, and so far to prosecute our revenge against him, that if it be possible, we will not onely worke his down-fall, but life and all. This being effected, we may at our pleasure governe the Realme without contradiction. He having ended his speech, Haufray replied, let it be as thou hast said: and that we may intrap his life, this shall be our plot: We will both go to the King, and tell him that this upstart, hath deflowered our sister, and that we took him in bed with her, which when the King heareth, will surely put him to death. Being thus resolved they daily fed their imaginations with the death of Valentine, while he (nothing mistrusting) served the King daily in all duty, inasmuch as the Kings love daily increased toward him, and above all other most desired his company.

Here let us leaue off a little, and come to Orson his brother, who all this while liued in the Forrest, so much feared of all men, that none durst approach nigh the Wood. Daily complaints came unto the King from ebery side, and amongst the rest, it chanced on a day, that a poore man came unto the King all wounded, saying thus unto him. Sir, I am come before you to make a complaint against a Wild-man in the Woods, for one day as I and my wife passed through the Forrest carrying bread, and other victuals, the wild-man came upon us, took it all away, and eate it ebery bit, and more then that, he violently took my Wife from me, and constrained her to yeld unto his lawlesse Lust. The King hearing out the poore mans tale, was disposed to make himselfe merry with his ill-fortune: and thereupon asked the poore man this Question: Whether grieved him most, either the taking away of his Victuals, or his Wife: by my faith said the poore man, at the wrong offered to my wife. Thou hast rightly said (quoth the King) therefore I command my Treasurer to see restitution made unto thee for the losse of thy victuals, but as for thy wife, thou must beare the burden thereof thy selfe,

After this the King called all his Barons to assemble and take some order to take this Orson, all which they did, and hereupon a proclamation was sent in to all parts of the Realme, that whoso eber he was that could take this Wild-man alibe, or dead, should haue a Thousand Markes for his reward. Hereupon assembled many worthy Knights to take this taske in hand: but the King being on a day in his Pallace, in the midst of all his nobles talking and debating who should be appointed to this business, Haufray (enemy unto Valentine) being there, said thus unto the King: Sir, here is Valentine whom you haue nourished and aduanced to great dignities, and one that hath offered unlawfull love to our Sister Eglantine: He were fittest to set forward to try his valour, and let him bee imploied to fetch in this Wild-man that is such a terror to the inhabitants: and if by his valor he can banquish him, then let him haue Eglantine in Mariage which is his desired wish. The King hearing these words of his Son, said, Away, for thy speech sabozeth of nothing but envy. What though he be poore, of low birth, and found in a Forrest, yet I find him to me true and trusty

trusty, and of a Gentle carriage, and to me seemeth to be bozne of a moze nobler carriage, then thou art: Leabe off these thy malicious and bitter speeches against him, for the behabour that dwelleth in him, shewes that he is descended of some Nobler lineage, then as yet to us appeareth. And I for my part (for the diuers bertues that dayly are seen in him,) am willing that he goe to my Daughter when eber he please, for I am well assured, that no dishour can be offered out of a branch of such a generous spirit.

Haufray hearing the King make this Apology on the behalfe of Valentine was soze displeased in heart, but setting a good face upon the matter, dissembled his countenance for that time, but it seemed Valentine well obserbed him, and at last brake forth into these words: Haufray, without any cause giben on my part, ye haue spoken ill of mee, and your will it is that I should undertake the fight and conquest of the Wild-man, only to this end, that I might end my daies, and so your rebenge be accomplished upon me: well, be it so, here before the King I take a solemne Oath: that I will take the enterprize upon me, and find out the Wild-man, and habing found him I will fight with him, and either bzing him in alibe, or dead, or else leabe my dead Carcasse (as a witnesse) in the open field. But if I conquer and liue, I will neuer moze be scene in this Country, till I haue found the Father that begot me, as also, bzing to light whether I was lawfully begotten in Wedlocke, and how I come to be left an Orphan in the Wood.

The King understanding well what danger Valentine had plunged himself unto, grew exceeding angry against his two sons, cursing them, for that they wox the cause of this dangerous enterprise: for he lobed Valentine moze then any, and at last, called unto Valentine and said: My child, aduise you well wth it you undertake, for with the wild-man to fight is desperation it selfe, you cannot be ignorant, how many valiant men and worthy Champions, haue by him ben overcome: and others likewise of valiant account that haue forsaken this combate. Therefore I say, let not the ebill words of a few malicious men dzibe you desperate in losing your life. For my child, it is far better to indure all the bitter words of enuy (which is accounted bertue) then to hazard ones life against such a monster, and no man.

Valen-

Valentine replied, pardon me (my Liege) for I will neber re-
 boke my intended purpose: They call me Found-brat, which grie-
 beth my very soul, for indeed I know not what I am, nor of what
 place, but I rest determined, and so I take my leabe, for to mor-
 row morning I wil set forward to my intended enterprize. Hab-
 ing taken his leabe, marvell not though the fair Lady Eglantine
 made great lamentation for what was happened, but the next
 morning by breake of day, she called one of her maidens and said:
 Go unto Valentine, and bid him come and speak with me before
 his departure, bid him feare no danger of life, for I would faine
 take my leabe of him. The damosell did as the Lady commanded,
 and when she came to Valentine she found him mounted on horse-
 backe, yet she bid her message unto him. He understanding her er-
 rand, said unto her: Damosell I know the love to be great betwixen
 my Lady Eglantine and mee, yet I would not wish her to desire
 that would turn to her dishonour, But enby is of great power,
 that it neber leaves them whom it once possessed. For certaine it
 is, that Haufray and Henry (Brethren unto your Lady) have at
 me great and malicious hearts, and will pursue me eben to death
 (if it be possible) wherefore faire Damosell beare her this answer
 which you have heard me tell, and bid her thinke no evil there-
 of, and further that she hold me in excuse, that I refuse to come,
 and so farewell.



CHAP. XIII.

How Valentine conquered his Brother Orson in the For-
 rest of Orleance.



Now is Valentine upon his journey to the Forrest,
 accompanied only with his Page, whither being
 come, he put his Helmet on his head and sent him
 back again. So he rode forth all that day, seeking
 the wild-man but he could not find him, so at night
 dratoing on he descended from his horse, cried him
 up

up unto a tree: having so don, he refreshed his body with such victuals as he had brought with him: when he had eaten, & the day shut in, Valentine for fear betook him to the top of a tree, and there abode all that night. In the morning so soone as day appeared, he looked round about, and at last espied his Brother Orson running through the Forrest: at length when he came to the place where Valentine had tied his horse, the Wild-man still drawing nearer unto him, wondering at the beauty of the horse, began to clato him with his long naples, thinking to rouse up the courage of the horse, for he had never seen the like. The horse feeling the wild-mans naples scratching his side, began to sting and kick exceedingly, Valentine sitting in the top of a tree, noted the terrible shape of the Wild-man, and began to be affraid, but calling on the Gods, he requested their aid against this Monster. Orson all this while was still buisted in beholding this Horse, and still offered him such injury with his naples, that the Horse did nothing but kicke and bite him. When Orson perceived the Horse to be too hard for him, he caught such fast hold of the Horse, that he thought to cast him over and fight with him. Valentine perceiving his horse in danger to be slaine, he cryed out aloud and said: Wild-man, leabe my Horse and stay but till I come down, and with me thou shalt have fighting enough. The Wild-man hearing a strange voyce, looked up into the tree, and espying there a man, made unto him divers signs with his hands and head to come down, and he would pull him in peeces. Valentine made all the hast he could, drew his Sword, and leapt upon the ground close by the Wild-man, when Orson saw the Sword and that he offered to smite him therewith, he leaped & kept him from the stroke, but suddenly returned again upon back Valentine, and threw unto the ground. Here-withall Valentine was very much discomfited, for he looked for no other then present death in that place, for he felt the strength of the Wild-man so great, that he had no hope of escaping.

Being thus both grobeling on the ground, Valentine assayed divers times to have gotten Orson under him, but could not, when he saw that by strength ther was no hope to overcome him, he drew out a sharpe pointed knife, and smote Orson deep, into one of his sides, that the blood issued out abundantly. Orson feeling himselfe wound-

wounded, all enraged, he gave such a screech that the Woods echoed again at the sound thereof, but yet recovering himself, he so fiercely assaulted Valentine with his sharp nailes, that he got him at such an advantage that he threw him once more upon the earth, where lying, they fought so long together, that it were too tedious here to utter. At last, Orson tooke the shield from about the neck of Valentine, and having gotten it he beheld it right strangely, in regard of the divers colours thereon emblazed: when he had looked his fill, he cast it against the ground, and suddenly returning again to Valentine, with the violence of his nailes and teeth, he brake in peeces both the ribs of his Armoz and his Habergion also, smiting and beating him so sharply with his nailes, that he made the blood follow in all places whereon he laid hold. Valentine feeling himselfe soze wounded after some Orisons used to the Gods, hee made againe upon Orson with his Sword, thinking to have smitten him, but Orson recopling back, stept unto a tree hard by, the which Tree he pulled up by the roots, and made thereof a club, being thus prepared, he made against Valentine, and striking at him, gave him such a blow, that he made him fall upon one knee. Valentine recovering again, laid about him fiercely, so there began againe another dangerous fight betwixen the two Brethren, not knowing they were so, nor the cause of this their Fortunes. Orson was so cruell and strong, that he could oftentimes have killed Valentine, had it not been for his sword, for he was soze afraid thereof, by reason he had received a wound befoze by a knife. Long time they fought together, insomuch as they both grew faint. In which neednesse both standing gazing on each other: Valentine looked wisely upon Orson, and said thus, Wild-man, wherefoze dost not thou peeld thy selfe to me? Were thou libest like a Beast, having no knowledge of humane society. Come thy way with me, and I shall make thee know both thy selfe and others. I will giue unto thee food of all sorts, and also cloath thee in apparrell fitting humane shape.

Orson understanding by signs that he would his good, fell down upon his knees, and stretched forth his hands towards his Brother, making unto him signes to forgive him, and he would commit himself under his command eber after, & with further signes

promised, that during his life he would assist him both in body and goods. This happening thus, it was great joy to Valentine, in that he had conquered the Wilde-man, which so many knights durst not meddle withall, for by this only he had wonne himselfe more honour then any knight that lived in France in those days. At this hand-adventure now knitting up in this manner, he tooke Orson by the hand, and shewed him by signes, that he should goe on before him till they were out of the wood, for he would not trust him behinde: and being out of the wood, Valentine tooke off one of his girtes, and bound both his hands fast unto his body, that he should not attempt again to do him any hurt: and in this manner being bound, hee mounted on Horse-backe, and led the Wilde-man with him like a Beast, who never resisted, which was a thing most of all to be wondred at.

CHAP. XI.



How *Valentine* having conquered *Orson* the Wilde-man, departed from the Forrest towards *Orleance*, whereas King *Pepin* was resident.



Valentine having conquered the wilde-man (as ye have heard) took his way towards *Orleance*, but you must imagin he could not reach thither in one day, wherefore the day being far spent, he determined to lodge at the next town or village: Being come thither, he thought there to take rest for that night, but the Inhabitants perceiving the wilde-man to come along with *Valentine*, every man ran into his House, shutting up their doores, and for very feare durst not offer once to look out on him, *Valentine* perceiving them full of feare, cryed out unto them, saying: Open your doores every man and feare not, for we come only for lodging, yet for all this they would not give him succour: At last, seeing neither intreaty nor threatnings would prevaile, he swore most bitterly, that if they would not receive him into their houses to rest there that night,

night, he would let loose the Wild-man amongst them. Still hee
 proceeded to intreat for lodging, but none would give it him. At
 last, as he had threatened so he did, and letting loose the Wild-man
 he made him signes how he should run against such a gate, which
 was an Inne, the which he did wizing a post from out the earth
 he ran against the gate, smiting it open with such violence, that
 they fell off the hookes upon the ground. Valentine seeing the gate
 opened in this manner, entred the house, and the Wild-man with
 him: But when they within saw their Gate broken down, they
 all forsooke the house, and ran out at the backe doore, leaving all to
 Valentine, and his beastly guest. Valentine perceibing them all
 fled, went to the Stable, and set up his Horse, and dressed him: and
 Orson in the mean time went into the Kitchen, where there was
 Capons and divers other provision of flesh upon a spit roasting at
 the fire. Valentine made signes unto Orson that he should turne
 the spit, but so soon as Orson understood his meaning, he set his
 bozzy talents upon the meate and toze it from the spit, debouring
 it as greedily as a ravenous Wolfe: when he had toze the meate
 in peeces, he espyed a Caldron of water standing by, into which he
 put his head like a Horse, and drank water unmeasurably. Va-
 lentine perceibing him to be a thirst, made signes unto him that he
 should forsake the water, and he would give him Wine: and there-
 withall tooke a pot and led him into the Sellar: when Valentine
 had drawn the potfull of Wine, he gave it unto Orson, who set
 it unto his mouth, and taking the liquoz found it to be very good,
 drinking so freely thereof that he drank out all the Wine, and af-
 terward threw the pot against the ground, making a signe unto
 Valentine to draw him more. Valentine fulfilled his signes, and fil-
 led him the pot againe, but Orson espying before his sight a little
 bowle dish, he put the Wine into it, and carried it into the Stable
 to Valentines Horse: But Valentine perceibing that, made signes
 unto him, that his Horse drank nothing but water, yet Orson
 shewed againe by signes, that wine was a great deale better then
 water. Many other accidents happened while they were in the
 house, which here we will passe over, for the night was so farre
 spent that rest was fitter for them, then meate. Valentine basted
 him to Supper making Orson to beare him company (after his
 kinde).

kinde) but Orson drank so freely of the wine that Valentine gave him that he became drunke, and in the end got him to the fire, and fell fast asleepe. Valentine seeing what had happened, said; Now doe I perceiue that there is neither any strength nor resistance in this Wild-man, for if I would I could here suddenly end his days. But in regard he would make a further tryall of him, he punched against him with his foot so hard, that it awaked him: being awaked, he made signes unto him, that there were people about the house: with that Orson suddenly arose as in a trance, and catching at a great log within the Chimney, he ranne against the Gate of the house, that he made all shake againe: at which sudden action, Valentine fell into a great laughter, which Orson perceiuing, let all alone and betooke himselfe to his rest again. Valentine made unto him another signe, that he should fear nothing for he would bee his watch-man, but Orson would not sleepe again, but with the log in his arme. And Valentine did as before hee had promised unto Orson, and watched all that night fearing the Inhabitants, least that they should grow into an uprore for they were so greatly possessed with fear, that they forsook their houses and ran ebery one into the Church, and all that night so tumbled the Wels backward, that ere the morning came, all the Willage was filled with men of warre.

Now the Morning being come, Valentine betooke him to his horse, leading Orson bound (as he had done the day before) towards Orleance, and the next day came to the City.

The Inhabitants of the City perceiuing the wild-man, ran ebery man into his house, shutting their doores and getting up into their higher roomes, gazing out of their windowes. Being entred the City, tidings came to King Pepin, that Valentine had conquered the Wild-man. The King hearing hereof was greatly astonished, and at last said; Valentine my child, in a happy houre wast thou borne, blessed be the Father that got thee, and the Mother that was delibered of thee in the wood, for now I see thou art fortunate and by thee are wee delibered of our feares. Valentine rode through the City of Orleance, till he came at the pallace gate of the King; and when the Porters saw Orson, they shut the gates upon them till Valentine with a loud voyce said unto them, feare



not, but goe tell the King that I will shield him and all his Court from the fury of this Wild-man, for I have made him so tame, that he will not hurt any one. The Porters went and told the King what Valentine said, who commanded they should enter the Pallace. Then Valentine took Orson by the hand and led him into the Court. When Berthe and the faire Eglantine heard that the Wild-man was come, they got them to their Chambers for feare. Valentine went up into the great Hall where King Pepin sat accompanied with his Nobles, kindly welcomming him home: Amongst the rest stood Haufray and Henry, who also made great shew of love, but in heart wished the wild-man had been his death, King Pepin and the rest of the Lords gazed on the wild-man, in so much as the King said he is made of a proper mold, faire of stature, and though now he seem rough, yet if he were clothed he would become the shape of a right worthy knight. Then Valentine

time said ; my Liege it were requisite he were baptiz'd, It pleaseth me well (said the King) let it be done. So a Priest was appointed to baptize him : these were his Godfathers King Pepin, the D. Millaon, Valentine, and the Dutchesse of Bourbon ; So they called his name Orson. The Baptisme being solemnized, the King gave him dole to Dinner, and Valentine waited on his Cup. When Orson was commanded into the Hall, to see his behaviour : no being come, the King beheld him earnestly. Orson seeing the meate, tooke as much as he could graspe in his hand and devour'd it. Having eaten that, hee espied one of the attendants that brought a Peacocke to the Table, who comming neare unto him, snatch'd away the Peacocke, and sat him down and devour'd it most greedily. Valentine seeing his behaviour, made signes unto him that he did not well, whereat Orson seem'd ashamed ; but the King had let him alone, for he much delighted in his rudenes. Orson having devour'd much meate, got a pot of Wine and drunk it off, throwing the pot to the ground. Night being come Valentine was appointed to a fair Chamber and a bed for Orson in the same, but so soon as ever hee entered the Chamber, hee laid him on the ground and so fell asleepe.



CHAPTER XV.

How Haufray and Henry tooke Counsell together to murder Valentine in the Chamber of Eglantine.

Rest glad and ioyfull was the fair Lady Eglantine
that Valentine had conquered the wild-man, inso-
much she sent him word to bring the wild-man in-
to her presence. Then Valentine took Orson by
hand, led him to the Chamber of Eglantine, where
was assembled divers Ladies of honour to behold him. Orson be-
ing in the Chamber, in a laughing humour leapt upon the bed, there
making divers signes unto the Ladies, which highly pleased them,
but his meaning they could not understand, at which they were
right

right sorry. At last Valentin opened unto them his meaning, which was, that he would gladly kisse and play with some of them, whereat they looked one upon another, & began to laugh. Whilst this assembly of the Ladies danced in the Chamber of Eglantina, Haufray came to Henry and said thus unto him, brother you see how the honour & credit of this foundling increaseth, which much eclipseth our honoz, and we must seek some remedy for it. It is true (said Henry) wherefore let us lay some plot to cut him off. Then said Henry, hearken to what I shall say, Valentine is now with our Sister, and we may have fit occasion to kill him in her chamber, when we have done we will informe the K. that we found him in her bed. According to their determination, they put it in action, & rushed into the Chamber of Eglantine, As soon as Haufray was entered he roughly thus began with Valentine; Disloyall man now shalt thou knowe the price of thy incontinency, purchasing daily great dishonour unto the King our Father, by abusing our sister Eglantine & leading her affection to work your pleasure on her, insomuch as by the she is made unfortunate. But sith the King hath been told hereof, & he regarded not our complaint, it is therefore high time to take vengeance on thee in our own persons: and Haufray lift up his fist, and calling him Traytor, smote Valentine on the face, so that the blood ran out at his mouth: Henry on the other side came to him, and with a Glabe thought to have smitten Valentine unto the earth. Orson perceiving they were in earnest, leapt out and gave Haufray such a stroake with his rough hand, that he felled him, & after ran to Henry and girded him so between his armes, that if the Ladies had not been in presence to have appeased the hurly-burly, the Wild-man had destroyed them both at once.

At this became an out-cry in the Chamber, whereat came all the Barons in the Court, to know the cause of this sudden clamoz, but when they understood that Orson dealt so violently with the Kings Sons, they would have killed him with their swords. Valentine perceiving their fury to arise, drew his sword, & swore that if any of them offered violence to Orson, he would run them thorow. This said he made a signe unto Orson to be still, and so he rested himselfe for that time. Haufray and Henry went to their Father, making unto him great complaint against Valentine and the Wild-

man,

man, saying; Father in an ebill houre was this Valentine bozue, for hee hath brought hither the wild-man onely to worke our overthrow, and if you put him not to death, he will shortly do the like against your Hopall person. The King hearing this complaint was exceeding sorry, and gave them this answer, that as for Orson he would have him put into a strong Tower, where he should be safely kept, and not come abroad without leave given him; and as for Valentine, the King sent for him to demand the cause of this disorder, Valentine being come before the King, began to say on this manner, *Dead Soberaign,* I was in the chamber of your Daughter Eglantine, accompanied with divers other Ladies, that desired to see Orson: I know not how, nor why your two sons Haufray & Henry violently entered the Chamber, charging me that I had abused the body of your faire daughter. Whereof in the heate of their violence used against me, Haufray smote me on the face, that the blood issued, and Henry lifting up his Sword thought to have taken away my life. All which, when Orson saw, he suddenly made toward them, and smote them both to the earth, and therewithall began this uprore. The King hearing this tale, said; and is this true that you have said? Upon my life (said Valentine) all that I have spoken is true. Then said the King, Orson hath done nothing but right, and that which in duty hee ought to do. And as for you Haufray and Henry, I see right well that you are even swollen full of malice against Valentine: wherefore I charge you from henceforth, that you atte npt no ill against him, for here I know that I would not loose him for the best Baron in my land, for I have made many tryalls of his love and faithfullnesse towards me, and with this answer Haufray and Henry departed, although sorry of heart that they could not worke their wils upon him.

They being gone, Valentine stayed still in the Kings Hall amongst the other Nobles that where there assembled, and Orson went here and there round about the Pallace, at last he came unto the Kitchen where the Cooks were making ready supper, and being there, he espied two Capons, ready for the fire, Orson made towards the Capons, and set upon them, eating them up raw like a hungry Dogge. The Cook seeing him cate up his Capons, toke a Pestell lying by him, and gave Orson such a blow

A

that

that he made him bow therewith. Orson feeling the blow, stooped down and took the Cooke up between the legs throwing him down upon the ground, and being down he so belaboured the poore Cooke, that he had well nigh beat him to death. Tydings was brought unto the King that Orson had slain the Cooke, and none durst come near him.

The King hearing hereof, toilled him to be brought befoze him, and made signes unto him, that he should be hanged; but Orson fetched the Pestell and made signes how the Cooke had beaten him therewith, Wherefore the King commanded that none should offer him any injury, So after that Valentine taught him manners how hee should behabe himselfe. And so they both lived quietly in the Court of King Pepin.



CHAP. XII.

How Duke Savary sent unto King Pepin for aide against the
Green Knight, who would have his Daughter in Marriage
against his will.

I chanced, that not long after the coming home of
Valentine and Orson into the Court of King Pepin
that Duke Savary sent certaine messengers to King
Pepin, which said to him on this manner: Great
King, our good Duke hath sent us unto you, to re-
quest your aide against a false and accursed Pagan
(called the Green Knight) who hath besieged his Confinnes and
intendeth to have his Daughter by force of armes against his wil.
Notwithstanding all the resistance that he and his three Sons can
make against him, The King having heard their Message, made
this answer, we agree to give him all the aid we can. He had
no sooner given answer unto these Messengers, but there was come
unto the Court another Messenger from Lyons who after his du-
ty done unto the King, said thus unto him, Renowned King, as-
semble your men of War in readinesse, and conduct them towards
Lyons.

Lyons, for the Almaines are coming against you in great numbers, their whole force consisting of above a Hundred Thousand fighting men, The King hearing this sudden newes was much troubled in mind: and presently called before him the Arch-bishop of Remes, the Duke Millon Daughler, Gervais and Sampson. these with others of his Nobles being assembled, he declared what the Messenger had said, and withall craved their Councell what was best to be done, whether to goe to Aquitaine to succour Duke Savary, or to Lyons, to resist the Almaines: whereunto Myllon Daugler made this answer, The Duke I confesse deserbeth to be succoured, but yet in two extreames, let us chuse the lesse: Therefore I judge it most meet first to defend your owne Land that is now in present danger: and for the Duke he must bee content to take our present affaires for answer: so generally it was concluded to go for Lyons.

With these words the Messenger that came from the Duke of Savary departed, and carried these tydings with him to Aquitain, which made him very sorrowfull to heare it, because the Greene Knight had very strongly assailed him. Now here gentle Reader. I let you understand for the better ordering our proceeding, that this Greene Knight here spoken of, was Brother to Farragus the Spaniard that kept the Lady Bellyfant in his Castle, who was the distressed mother of these two Infants borne in the Wood, called Valentine and Orson, as is before declared. Duke Savary perceiving no hope of aid from King Pepin made open Proclamation throughout all his Dominions, that all of what Condition soever, should be ready armed against the morrow after, for he would then goe out upon the Greene Knight and fight with him in the field, all which was accordingly performed. The day appointed being come, both Armies met, as well Horse as Foot. The Pagans presented themselves in multitudes, and the Green Knight behabed himselfe so valiantly, that at first encounter with his Battell Art, at two blowes he slew two valiant Knights. Duke Savary perceiving him to be so war-like a Generall, came up to encounter him, and meeting they assailed each other, But the Duke was ill advised to adventure his body against the Green Knight, because it was ever predominately reported of him, that he should never be

ouercome of any, except he were a Kings Son, and such a one as had neber sucked the breasts of any Woman. But the Greene Knight was herein deceived, for he thought impossible any such man should be upon the face of the earth: but it fell out contrary to his expectation as ye shall understand. Let us now returne to the two baliant leaders who fought long and fiercely, but the Duke ventured so far into the enemies hands, that when he had thought to have rettyed he could not, for he was round begirt with such multitudes of Pagans, that he was taken prisoner and brought backe unto the Greene Knight, whose Ransome could not bee granted for any Gould or Treasure. His men at Armes perceiuing the Duke surprized, returned to Aquitaine, soze lamenting the losse of their good Duke. And his three Sons Garin the elder, Anselme and Garin the younger, made great moane to see the hard hap of their Father, led captiue among the Pagans.

The sons habing shewed their sorowes, in comes Fezon his Daughter with this lamentable out-cry, alas in an ill houre was I bozne, seeing that so many baliant Knights and Gentlemen have suffered death in my quarrel, and yet there is one thing moze troubleth my distempered soule then all the rest, which is this: : that my Father should be held captiue in the hands of his enemies, the only way to bring his aged yeares with sorow to the grave. Alas (deare Father) your love to me is the only cause of all these disastrous chances. Thus fel Fezon into a dangerous fit of discontent, insomuch as with this extremitie of sorow, she had wel-nigh finished her daies: had not the rest of the Ladies attendant laboured to comfort her in this great sorow wherewith she was almost ouercome.

Whilst the Lady was thus oppressed with sorow, the Greene Knight triumphed ober the worthy D. causing him to be brought before him into his Habillion, and habing him there, began to rebuke him in this disdainfull manner: Duke, now thou perceiuest that thou art my vassall, and that I habe power ober thy life, this that I speake thou canst not deny: therefore let me tell thee what thou shalt expect from my sacred lips: either gibe me thy Daughter Fezon to wife, and so redeeme thy life, or else I will habe her against thy will, leading her amongst rough Mountains, and there

there royally Crowne her Queen of all those craggy Mansions.

The Duke hearing these proud menaces, began thus to reply: Proud and insolent Sarazen, know this, that I will never give content that thou have my Daughter, except thou also subscribe to be baptized. The Green Knight hearing him say so, replied: Urge me no further, for I am wholly bound to Mahomet, toherfore once againe I tell thee except thou yeeld to my demand, I will first make thee finish thy days miserably, and afterward consume all Aquitaine to ashes, and after that put to the Sword all that come in my way, Men, Women, and Childzen. The Duke hearing this Pagan thus resolute, beganne againe on this manner: Pagan, the Gods protect me from thy cruelty, for I had rather rely on their power, then thine. The Green Knight hearing him say so, began wisely to set his eye upon him, and marking his untoward lamentations, began afresh with him on this manner: Gracious Duke, leaue off these thy sad laments, andarken unto my relation and resolution also, and this it is: I am not ashamed to let thee understand that thy Daughters beauty hath enthralled me, and therefore I will recall my threatned sentence of death against thee: Out of which captivated affections towards thy Daughter, I am forced to yeeld to this condition, that thou shalt find out a knight within the space of six months, to encounter me, and if so it happen that by strength of Armes he conquer me, I bow by all the Heavens, to send thee backe againe into thy owne Country, without wasting any of the same. But if it happen that I prove Conqueror over that Knight, then shalt thou willingly resign thy faire daughter into my hands, to be my lawfull wife. These Articles being produced, the Duke willingly agreed thereunto, so the Truce was accordingly proclaimed.

These agreements thus concluded, the Greene Knight gave leave that Duke Savary should depart upon conditions, that hee should sweare to keep covenants not only for the present, but during his life. The Duke being thus delibered, made his repair to Aquitaine, whither being come, he caused open Proclamation to be made of those conditions whereunto he had before subscribed concerning his said Daughter: and withall the truce taken for the space of six months. His Counsellours hearing what was past, ad-

bised him to dispatch Messengers into all Lands, with these aduertisements following : If there were any Knight whatsoeber, that durst encounter the Greene Knight for the love of the beauteous Lady Fezon, he should lay down his gage, and so bee answered. These Letters were sent into twelbe Christian Lands : tobat followed, you shall better learne by the succeeding Chapter.



CHAP. XIII.

How divers Knights arrived at *Aquitaine*, at a solemne
Joust there holden to beare away the love of the
beauteous Lady Fezon.

During this time of truce, between the Duke Savary and the Green Knight, Pepin King of France, had taken his journey against his enemies at Lyons, accompanied with a mighty host of men: being come before the City with all his forces, hee set upon a King called Lamparris who had also brought into field 40000 fighting men. This Lamparris was King of Seyres, Holland, and Friezland, with the Country of Monemarch, in the which stood a very strong defended City whereunto they withdrew themselves : King Pepin getting knowledge hereof, strongly begirt this City with a sledge, insomuch that at last they were constrained to yeeld or suffer famishment, but resolving upon the safety of their libes, they yeilded their City, which City the King bestowed upon Guy Marshall of France. These wars being ended, Pepin returned againe into France with all his warlike Souldiers : being arrived at Paris, it was told him that Duke Savary had taken truce with the Green Knight, and the manner how, whereat the King laughing heartly said in the presence of his Barons, who is he amongst you that would win faire Fezon for his Love, must take upon him a Combat against the Greene Knight, whom if he conquer and overcome, the Duke will not only gibe him his Daughter, but one halfe of his possessions : and that this is true, behold Letters here written

written with his own hand. Every of these worthy knights right diligently bestowed these Letters, yet none of them durst undertake the enterprize, save onely Valentine who perceibing them all refuse it, said thus unto the King: Right deare Soberaigne, if it please you to give me leave, I will adventure my strength upon that Greene Knight, and will gladly undertake the taske committed. Again, I have a great desire to leave France, for I long to take in hand some tedious journey, to find out the Mother that bare me, and from whence I am descended. Valentine (said the King) take thou no care of whence thou art, for it resteth in my power to make thee greater then any man within my court, & for that I find thee willing to go to Aquitaine, I freely give thee leave, but on this condition, that after thou hast tryed thy Manhood with the Greene Knight, thou returne againe if thou escape with life. Valentine yielded to the King in his demand, and so taking leave, he shortly after prepared to his Journey.

When Eglantine heard that Valentine would go into Aquitaine she was very sorrowfull, and at last in the midst of teares sent for Valentine to come unto her. Valentine promised the Messenger to be with her anon, which accordingly he performed, and being come, she brast forth into teares, saying: Ah Valentine, now I doe well perceive that all my joyes are at an end, and that you are resolved to leave this Countrey of France. Ah, would to God it might be my good hap to goe with you, for there is not a man living, whom I hold so deare as you, and (were I not curbed by my high birth) I would make thee my Husband. And that thou mayest the better perceive my true intent, take thou here the keyes of all my Treasure, and take what pleaseth thee, for there is great store, and the Gods give thee succour in all thy knightly enterprizes.

Lady (quoth he) Silver and Gold need I none, but that which most of all distempereth my unquiet Brest, is, that I cannot learne of my descent. Moreover, one thing more troubleth me as much as the other, which is this, I beare upon one of my shoulders a crosse and it is of the colour of most pure Gold, of which signe I know not what to gather, but resolve thus never to rest in any place, untill such time as I have found out the truth of my

Patibity, and so lobely Lady, I take my leabe, earnestly request-
ing you to stop the current of these Wrinish tears: and withall I
bow, that, if I finde my birth answerable to the Majesty from
whence you are descended, to take you as my only choyce to Wife,
forsaking all other. On the other side, habing found out my birth,
and perceibing it not answerable to yours, I would not be your
Husband for all the wealth in the world. For malicious tongues
in time to come will say, where is the Brethren, Sisters, or Co-
zens of this runnagate, that hath presumed to match himself unto
the Daughter of our mighty King Pepin? habing spoken all these
words, he departed, leaving Eglantine full of griefe. But when
she had some little time sat still, she could not be satisfied, but of-
fered to follow him together soever he went, and in conclusion
brought him on some part of his way, being accompanied with
dibers of the Nobility. Valentine being departed Haufray and
Henry wer right glad hereof, privily conspiring how to bytag it to
passe that Valentine, with his Brother Orson (who went along
with him) might by Treacherous villany, come unto an untimely
death.



CHAP. XVIII.

How *Haufray* and *Henry*, accompanied with a Troope of
their Confederates, lay in ambush to take away the
life of *Valentine*.



Valentine & Orson habing taken their leabe of King
Pepin, addrest themselves for Aquitaine, Being
on their way, Haufray and Henry consulted toge-
ther (sopning to their aide a third, who was Co-
zen to them both) how they might lye in Ambush to
set upon Valentine and Orson, to tooke their de-
struction: which number was about thirty strong able men. This
plot being thus come to perfection, charge was giben to these war-
like men, that if they could not overcome Valentine and his Bro-
ther

ther Orson to death, yet they should lay hold on Valentine, and keep him safe. The place appointed wherein this should be done, was a very large and great Forest through which Valentine must needs passe. Not long after the Ambush was pitched, it so chanced that Valentine came riding along the Forest with Orson running by his side, stoffer then any Horse, who comming neere the place where these Armed men lay, forth stept their Captaine (called Grygar) accompanied with all his Troopes with their weapons drauone, thinking to haue surprisid Valentine on the sudden, and to haue put him to death: Now this fierce Traitor lent him such a mortall blow, that his Sword passed quite thorow his Armour, and entred into his flesh, insomuch as the blood followed the blow, and withall uttered forth these unwelcome words: Valentine,



either yeeld thy selfe Captiue, or receiue thy death. Valentine, as a man all amazed was somewhat moubed at the sight of his own blood,

blood, and considering how he was encompassed with a multitude of his enemies recommended his innocency unto the Gods, and at last spake on this manner: My Lords (speaking to Haufray and Henry) I see well that you have determined my dayes by Treason, and without any cause on my part giben, but yet I assure you, that before I yeeld my selfe into your hands, or before this dayes Sun bee Set, I shall send some of you here present into such a Country that you shall scarcely euer returne againe to bring tidings of your baloe. And herewithall drew forth his Sword, and gave the first that encountered him such a blow upon his head, that he clabe it eben to his teeth, and there lay he dead. After that he betooke him toward the rest with such violence, that at every stroke one fell before him.

Orson perceibing his Brother thus to lay about him, began to rouse himselfe, and with his rough hands and peircing talents, he rent and toze all that came in his way, and so bit them with his teeth, that they fell grobeling unto the ground one upon another, where he trampled over them like dirt, pinching them with his feet. Valentine seeing his Brother Orson thus bestir himselfe, held up his bloody sword, defending himselfe, and offending his enemies so baltantly, that they all forsooke them, and durst not stay within their sight: Grygar their Captain perceibing all his men thus pitifully killed and overcome, cried out with a loud voyce on this manner. Valentine yet I with thee yeeld, or else look for nothing but death. Valentine hearing these his insulting words, made toward Grygar and in fierce and furious manner assailed him; but being too forward he plunged himself into the throng, that he was enclosed round about keeping off Orson's their long speares. Seeing thus begirt about with enemies, he still behaved himself so baltantly, that not any man durst lay hold upon him, till at last they gathered in so close upon him, that he was even overcome with multitudes, & being not able longer to wield his Sword, they took him, bound him, & carried him away to strong hand. Orson perceibing his brother thus posted away, ran after, making a hideous noise, but he could not overtake them, for they rid away swifter then he could run, shabing at last lost sight of the, knew not what way he were best to take after. Grygar the Captaine, commanded them

them to follow after Orson, and to bring him backe, either alive or dead: but in vain they followed, for he out-ran them, and so escaped.

Those that had the charge of Valentine, brought him to a Castle standing in the midst of the Forrest, kept by a notable Theefe. who was Cozen-Germain to Grygar, Valentine being entred the castle gate, they entreated him evilly, conveyed him to a deepe Dungeon, which grieved him to the heart, insomuch that his grief brast out into these words: Alas, now is that come upon me, which I ever feared, for I am fallen into the hands of my deadliest enemies, and of those that have ever sought my life and utter destruction. Farewell Noble King Pepin, for I feare I shall never see thee more, and that which most of all bereth me, that thou shalt never understand the truth of my death, for the very stench of this ugly Dungeon, doth even stop my breath. Farewell Orson too for thou hast already suffered death for my sake, and more could no man do, even as much as if thou hadst been my naturall Brother. Farewell my sweet Mother also, whom I have ever laboured to find out, that I might see and know her, but my hopes are all frustrated, for now must I die, without the knowledge of what Parentage I am descended. Thus Valentine lamented in the dark pit, whilst his enemies determine what shal be done to him. Some were of opinion to put him to death, others that he should be committed to a perpetuall imprisonment. But Grygar being Lord over the rest, would not yield he should be put to death, but rather to keep him in prison till Haufray and Henry had received knowledge of all their proceedings. Having thus set down their resolution, they determined to take their Journey towards Paris, where the King then lay, to meet with Haufray and Henry who entertained them royally, being right glad that Valentine was fallen into their hands by Treason. Now understand, that Orson all that night was faine to rest within the Wood, lying dolone at the root of a Tree. The morning being come, he took on his way towards Paris also, never resting till hee came into the presence of King Pepin: being come thither, by signes and tokens he shewed the manner of the taking of Valentine: but yet for all the hast hee made, Grygar was arrived at the Court before him. Haufray and Henry were much grieved that Orson had escaped, but all their

comfort was he could not speake, thinking thereby to escape from all mistrust, but their hopes were all layd in the dust, as hereafter will appeare.

The next day the two Bretheren had appointed that Grygar should returne in all hast to the Castle to put Valentine to death: but see how it came about, that all their Counsels are quite overtone; for Orson (as before I said) came unto the Kings Palace that morning and growing towards Dinner time, the tables being all prepared, the King accompanied with sundry Nobles, Barons, and Knights came in, and every man tooke his place. The King being set, and casting his eyes abroad, suddenly espied Orson, whom when he beheld, he thought by him that Valentine was not far off, but it fell out contrary, Orson ran through the Hall, making a lamentable noyse, and knocking his breast in most hideous and fearefull manner, drabe the King into Ten Thousand seates, and all the rest who beheld this lamentable spectacle. Orson ran again along by the table, looking very fiercely on every man, and making many fearefull signes. Amongst the rest, at the last he lighted upon the Traytor Grygar, who espying Orson hung his head in his bosome. Orson habing once gotten sight of him, ran furiously upon him, and gave him such a sturdy stroake, that he smote off one of his eares. After he began to lay upon his face, in somuch that he put out one of his eyes, and broke one of his teeth. Grygar being thus wounded, began to cry out for helpe, but Orson hearing him make such an uprore, ran again upon him, and gave him such another stroke, that he felled him unto the earth, overthrowing tables, meat, and all that stood before him, which drabe all the beholders into admiration, and had he not been rescued by a haliant Prince that then sate at Words, he had never gone from that place alive, which Prince habing rescued him, began to say unto the King on this manner: Mighty King, consider into what danger this man is fallen by the fury of this Wild-man, and either let him die for this presumptuous fact, or no man will be able to come into your Court. The King hearing him say so, replied, we will consider the cause, and as wee find it, so will wee proceed against him. Wying him hither before us that we may question the cause of this his fact, Orson was brought before the King, and hee demand-

demanded how hee durst presume so far into the privacy of his Majesty? Orson presently answered by signes, how that they had slain Valentine in the forest, and that he would be revenged for his death, on that inhumaine Traytor Grygar, and withall closed his Fist, and put it to his mouth in great rage, in token of defiance. King Pepin perceiuing by his action the course of the matter, called forth unto all his Lords and Barons on this manner: My Lords, you see as well as I, that this wild-man hath challenged Grygar, to fight with him: therefore tel me your opinions, what is best to be done in this case, for I cannot choose but marvell, why this Wild-man should find out Grygar above all the rest of the Knights here assembled: therefore let every man freely speake, for I much doubt some hidden secret to lie herein, and for my part I could willingly give consent, that it should be tryed forth by combat between them. When the King had thus uttered what hee thought, the Barons agreed to the verdict that the King had passed. So the battell was determined, and Grygar was brought before the King, to the intent he should undergoe the Challenge against the Wild-man. Grygar hearing what the King had determined, was very fearefull and sad, and not without cause: for he foresaw hereby, that treason would come to light, and therewithall cast an ill-faboured eye on Haufray. Henry perceiuing Grygar stand so amazed, said, Grygar feare not, for I promise thee whatsoever it fall out, that no danger shall come unto thee from our Father the King, for we will worke your peace assuredly, so thou wilt sweare never to reveale the fact, yea, (quoth Grygar) I well perceive how the case will goe with me, I must suffer a reprochfull death for your sake, Having thus said he left Henry, and turned unto the King, saying might King, let me make one request unto your Majesty, that you would dismiss me from this dangerous taske: the reason chiefly moving me, is, that inso much that it is not man against man, whereby a Knight may win honor, but a wild savage to encounter with man, and that man no Knight, I thinke I may safely (so your grace be pleased) refuse the combat. Nay (quoth the King) no excuse in this case can be admitted, for the combat is granted not only by my owne advice, but also by the counsell of all my Barons, and the reason moving us to grant it, was, that

treason long lying hid might come to light, Grygar bearing it thus concluded on, grew more into despair, but Haufray being there present, comforted him again on this manner. Doubt not, for you have equity on your part : and besides, I will see you well armed in all points, fitting your knightly race.

When Orson gathered by his wanted signes that hee should fight with this Traytor, hee was right glad, and withall made shewes unto the King, Valentine was dead, whereat the King grew wondrous sad, and fain would Orson have been upon the backe of Grygar, but that the King commanded him to be taken away, making signes unto him that he should strike no more, till the time they should meet for the tryall of the truth. Againe the King called unto Grygar to make hast to arme himselfe. Grygar loth to venture his life upon so uncertaine ground, began once againe to speak unto the King, saying : Most dread Soberaigne, I have been along serbitor about your person, both in war and peace but you reward me not accordingly, insomuch, as you compell me to fight against a man that hath neither sence, reason, nor in truth humane shape. Grygar (said the king) if the right be on your side you need not feare, for you shall enter into the field well armed, and as for Orson he shall adventure upon this altogether unarmed. Again, you shall be well mounted on horse-backe, he on foot, nor shall he beare any weapon. The right you say is on your side, wherefore maintaine that right, and shew your valor, for the sentence of combat may not be re-called.



CHAP. XIX.

How Orson and Grygar fought together, and how Orson returning victor, caused Grygar to confesse the treason, who was after hanged, and Valentine delivered from the Dungeon.



He place of combate being appointed. Orson attended in a readinesse for his enemy : in the end Grygar being well armed by Haufray and Henry, took his leave of them on this wise ; My Lords, in your cause am I de-
liberated

libered ober to death, e bill was the day wherein I beganne this enterprize. Hold thy peace (said Henry) for I will defend thee from the sentence of my Father, and worke thy safety so thou wilt be secret, Grygar being thus armed, and well mounted on his horse, went towards the Pallace Gate, where this combate was to be effected, The houre being come the King repaired to the Window to behold the combate; All the Nobles in the Court being assembled, the judges were appointed, that no wrong should be offered on either part. So Grygar being entred the Lists, he espied Orson, and began to drave neare unto him saying: Villaine, thou hast offered me great wrong in putting forth one of my eyes, but ere I part I will make thee acknowledge that wrong, and that thou hast falsely accused me to the King. Orson perceibing whereunto his proud speeches tended, shewed him his naxles, gnashing his teeth together at him: whereat Grygar suddenly couched his speare within his rest, and ran upon him. Orson espying the spear bent against him, gave backe, whereby Grygar was disappointed of his marke, and ran his spear fast into the ground, Orson taking this advantage, suddenly returned backe againe, seized the speare into his own hands, and habing hold thereof, gave his enemy such a stroke, therewith, that he astonished him. Grygar feeling the surp of his stroke, set spurs to his Horse, and ran like a mad man about the field, Orson ran after him with a grinning countenance, making signes unto the King, that he would ere long force him yeld unto him. Grygar fearing the danger wherein he was like to fall, secretly to himselfe murmured out these words: Ah Hauf-ray for thy cause and sake am I thus delibered ober to death. Long and tedious was the fight, but Grygar could never so much as wound the Wild-man.

At last, Orson cast away the speare, and came close to Grygar, in such manner, that he caught his Horse fast by the neck, making him so mad and furious, that he oberthrew his rider to the earth, and with the fall thereof, he lost his Shield. Orson espying the shield, tooke it up, and put it upon his owne backe: after, he came unto Grygars Horse and gate upon him, riding round about the field, and making ill-faboured signes and tokens, insomuch, as all the beholders there present, stood as men dismayd. Amongst the

the rest, the King himselfe appeared very sorrowfull, and at last began thus to speake: My Lords, I know not what to thinke hereof, neither can I yet perceibe whereunto this fight will growe but it is my opinion, that there is Treason smothered, and not yet come to light. Orson havinge now a great while ranged about the field on horse-backe after his enemy, at last forsooke his horse and encountred Grygar on foot, insomuch that he lent him such a blow, that he smote him to the earth, afterward he leaped upon him, and disarmed him of his weapons: then the next blow he stroke. hee smote off one of his armes: next, on the body he gave him such a wound that he cut him even to the reines of the back. Grygar havinge receibed all these wounds, cryed out most pittieously: insomuch that every one requested he might have a priest to confesse him of his sins. The guard that was appointed for the field, hearing these out-cries, sent out a worthy knight to demand what he would have done, unto whom Grygar said: Sir bring me before the Kings Majesty, and before him and the rest of this assembly, and I shall reveale the Treasons whereof I am guilty, from point to point effectually.



CHAP. XX.

How Grygar being vanquished by Orson, confessed his Treason to King Pepin, and how Haufray and Henry had been the only plotters thereof, against the worthy Valentine.

A last Grygar was brought before the King, who asked pardon for his high offence, and in the presence of all the beholders, told him, that the only actors in this Traiterous plot, was Haufray and Henry his sons, and by their meanes hee had taken Valentine and put him in prison, and there meaning (in secret manner) to have put him to death. The King havinge heard out his Tale, and perceibing the whole truth of this plot against Valentine, commanded Grygar to be hanged upon the next tree he came unto. The King having thus given sentence against

against Grygar, called for his Horse, and being mounted, made all hast possible unto the Prison wherein Valentine lay. Orson perceiving the King in person would undertake such a Journey, adressed himselfe to run along by the Kings horse, leading him the way and making many signes of joy and gladnesse all the way he went. The King marking well all the Wild-mans behabioz, often spake unto his Lords on this manner: My Lords, it is wonderfull that this Wild-man should beare such an ardent affection towards Valentine, and besides it strikes me into a thousand imaginations. Now you must know, that the King had great cause even to love this Wild-man, for that he was his naturall Nephew, though as yet not revealed, neither was the time yet come to bring it to light till that by Clerimond (sister unto the gyant Farragus) it should be made manifest: For, at that time Clerimond had a Castle and in it a Head of Basse, composed by nigromancy, which head told unto Clerimond all that should happen unto her all her life: and also, all that eber she had done in her forepassed time. Besides, this same head was composed by such wondrous Magicall Art, that it should neber leabe off speaking, untill the noblest Knight in the world should enter the Castle, and then the head utterly to give ober, and neber to speake more.

This Magicall spell, fell out upon Valentine, whom that faire Lady Clerimond shall take to Husband, and for whom hee shall endure a world of miseries, as (God willing) in the succeeding History you shall understand. So leabe we this, and returne backe againe to King Pepin where before we left him. King Pepin goeth on his journey towards the Forrest to save the life of Valentine, and Orson being with him, brought him unto the very Castle wherein he was clapt up. Being come to the Gates thereof, the Porters knowing the King, barred the Gates, for so they were commanded by the residue within the Castle, upon paine of life. The King perceiving he could not enter in peace, command his Attendants to enter by force, and so they did. Being gotten within the Castle they seized upon all the seditious Traytors, and bound them fast in chaines, having to done, they went into the Dungeon where Valentine lay bound, and brought him forth unto the King. Valentine espying the King, fell upon his knees, yelding him thou-

faras of thanks, for that extraordinary kindnesse shewed to him, in deliuering him out of a hell of darkenesse and fear of death. The Barons also that attended the King, welcommed him with great ioy and gladnes, telling to him al that had happened, and how that Orson had fought with the Traitor Grygar in his quarrell, and ouercame him: Valentine hearing thereof embraced Orson. Afterward, the King commanded that all the Traitors should be led into the Wood, and there hanged; and after spake thus unto Valentine, Valentine, seeing it is thy good hap to be thus miraculously deliuered out of the hands of thine enemies, I would aduise thee to abide with me: but he replied, Dread Soberaign, pardon me for I will neuer retorne againe, till I haue found out the Parents of whence I am descended: and so humbly take I leaue of your Majesty, and euer rest (only this excepted) at your command and service. So heere leaue tooke King Pepin, and onely looke upon Valentine and Orson who are taking their way towards Aquitaine to fight with the Green Knight, a man feared of all men: for I must call to remembrance that of which I told you before, that he should neuer be banquished by any, save only by a Kings son that neuer sucked woman. Being come to Aquitaine, the people flocke from all parts, to behold the rough and unmanly shape of Orson: but Valentine seeing their folly, made him a Jacke of Steele to put upon him; when Orson had it on his backe, he was much offended thereat and would haue throwen it away, but that he much feared Valentine, and would do any thing that he commanded.

Orson habing his Steele Jacke upon his backe, looked much upon himselfe, and at last became proud thereof, and set his countenance according to his heart. Now as they were riding on their way, Valentine espied a faire Squier, making much lamentation. Valentine beholding him well, said thus unto him: Friend what ayleth you to shed these teares? haue you sustained any wrong either by man or beast: Tell me what may be the cause, and I promise you the best of my power, to relieue your distressed case? Alas (said the Squier) thereof I make no doubt, but know this, that the cause of my laments, is the losse of a most kind and gentle master, and a man of the greatest valor in Christendome. How haue you lost him (quoth Valentine?) Sir, as he was travelling

towards Aquitaine, to fight with the Green Knight, thinking thereby to win the fairest Lady in the world (called Fezon) which Lady it is not possible for any to have, except first he overcome in single combat the Green Knight. Divers balliant knights have there miscarried: and when he conquereth them he causeth them to be hanged on a tree: and the number that are already dead, are thirty two, pelding no shew of mercy towards any. Is al this true (quoth Valentine) that thou hast told me? Why then sure he is some Deuill in mans shape, that doth such strange exploits: But towards Aquitaine am I journeying; to try my fortune against him, for I have heard much of that Lady Fezon, Wa, sir, (quoth the squior) goe not thither, to lose your life on such a deuill. Squior (said Valentine) I will go forward and mean to cope with that famous Green Knight: but if I can escape him, I will first talke with the Lady Fezon, and take her aduertisement.

Orson gathering some understanding of their talke, made signes unto Valentine that he might fight with the Green knight, and that he would make lobe unto the Lady Fezon, wherat Valentin laughed heartily. By this time, thinke them to be come neare the City of Aquitaine, standing upon a Hill: and meeting with an Old-man, he questioned with him what City that was before him. Harry (quoth he) it is Aquitaine. How tell me (said Valentine) where resteth the Green Knight? Why Sir (said he) without the City, I thinke you are going to fight with him. I (quoth Valentine.) Ah sir (said the old-man) undertake not so foule a folly, for it is not possible to conquer him. Come hither my son, and stand thou on this little hill, and I shall shew thee adobe forty famous knights hanging on a tree, whom he hath overcome. Also, there is now but fiftene daies to be accomplished, and then the Duke of Aquitaine must part from his faire Daughter Fezon, to his great grieve, and to the overthow of the whole Dukedome. Father (quoth Valentine) the Gods defend her. He had no sooner spoke these words, but there came another ancient man of fourscore yeares of age in the habite of a Pilgrim. This man was that Blandiman, squior to the distressed Bellyfant, and he it was that led his Lady Bellyfant into the Castle of Ferragus the Gyant, as before we have declared, Valentine espying him, demanded of him

whence he was, and whence he came? Sir (quoth the Pilgrim) from Constantinople, but I could not enter into the City, by reason of a Pagan Souldan had begirt it with a siege, neither could I come to deliver the message on which I was sent, wherefore I thought it my safest course to returne. Pilgrim (quoth Valentine) what thinkest thou of the Green Knight, is it not possible he should be overcome? No (said the Pilgrim, and I advise you not to follow the enterprise:) for if there were a whole Hundred of you, he would see the end of you all. Father whither goe you said Valentine? Sir I take my readiest way to Paris, for I have a message to King Pepin, from a sister of his named Belysant that long time hath been banished from Constantinople wrongfully, and now is the good Lady in the house of a Spaniard, that keepeth her, and useth her honorably, intending to know King Pepins mind, whether he be consenting to those wrongs done unto her, for well he knoweth she is a vertuous Lady, and for her sake offereth to put himselfe in single Combat with the Emperour of Greece, for that he hath so wrongfully banished her. Palmer (quoth Valentine) I pray thee return back again with me to Aquitaine, for thither am I going to fight with the Green Knight: if the Gods give me victory against him, I will accompany thee into France, for I shall tell thee, only for the love I beare unto King Pepin, undertake I this fight, for he hath been the meanes of my preservation, and as a Father unto me. Therefore to him I dedicate all my labors, and rest wholly at his command. Sir (quoth Blandiman) to this motion I will never consent, for my Lady hath put me in trust to dispatch her affaires, and I will discharge the duty of a trusty servant towards her, and so taking my leave, I commend you to the protection of the Gods: The Palmer being gone, Valentine looked long after him, and not without cause, but he wist not why, for this was the man that had bozne a part of his Mothers exiles. Well, Valentine also tooke on his journey, and after some few dayes, came nere to the City of Aquitaine. Valentine beheld the City very earnestly, and passing on he espied a pleasant Fountaine, thither he went, and alighting from his Horse, laid him down under a tree, to refresh his tired limmes, and Orson was his keeper all the while he slept: Anon he awoke and prepared himself to take Horse again, but suddenly there

there arrived at the same fountaine, a couragious knight, proud
and of so haughty a stomack, that he was stiled the Proud knight,
and withall so fierce and resolute, that he never all the dayes of
his life asked Question of any man, yet if he whom he met salut-
ed him not, he presently killed him. This proud knight came to
the Fountaine, and Valentine beholding him, said never a word,
and Orson also gazed fiercely upon him. The proud knight was
angred in his heart, and approached neer unto Orson, and gave
him such a blow that the blood issued out at his mouth. Orson feel-
ing the blow smart, suddenly tooke him and threwe him to the
earth under him, and presently espying a knife at the knights
girdle, smote him therewith into the body so deep, that he was
nothing but blood. The knight feeling himselfe wounded, cryed
out aloud, whereupon Valentine comming in, rescued the knight
out of Orsons hands, and said: Fair knight, you have offered great
wzong to smite a poore ~~Wild~~ man on this rude manner, who
can speake never a word: with that the proud knight beganne
thus roughly to answer Valentine: Proud miscreant, why then
dost not thou salute me? and therewith drew forth a Glabe think-
ing to have smitten him. Valentine seeing the blow, drew forth his
sword, and stroke at the proud knight with such violence, that he
stroke him in manner dead, and said unto him: Hereafter learne
thou to salute men in more freindly manner. The Proud knight
being dead, his men fled with all the hast they could unto the City
of Aquitaine, bearing tidings of their Masters death. Duke Sava-
ry hearing thereof, was greatly displeased, for he was his Cozen.
Amongst the rest Valentine understood of the lamentation that
was made for the death of the proud knight besides the Fountaine:
whereupon he suddenly mounted on Horse backe, and entred the
City, wher he lodged in a Burgessees house of the same City, wher-
by it came to the eares of Duke Savary, that he had slaine his Co-
zen. The Duke commanded that Valentine and his Brother Or-
son should be brought before him: So being come into the presence
of the Duke, he began on this manner, Friends (quoth he) of
whence are you? What Prince do ye serbe? And whether be ye
knights or no? Sir (said Valentine) I am a knight, and owe my
duty and serbice to the famous King Pepin of France. Then said

the Duke unto him, you have slaine my Cozen : tis true (said Valentine) and so I should have done had it been my own kinsman, for he was so high of stomacke, that he disdained to speake to any man, and smote so furiously at my companion, that he had neare hand killed him : which I perceiuing, drew forth my sword and slew him. Faire Duke, know this, I am a stranger in this City and hither am I come to Combate with the Green knight: as also, to behold that beauteous Lady Fezon, whom the whole world admires: Wherefore I thinke it a Law of equity for Strangers to passe up and doone in safety, considering I have shewed you the cause of my coming. When the Duke heard Valentine say so, he said unto him : Knight, right well hast thou answered me, and seeing my Cozen hath come by this, more by Pride then courage, I am right sorryfull, and so I passe it ober, and pardon the deed. But in that you urge that your coming hither was only to Combate the Greene Knight : come you into my Pallace, and there you shall behold the beauty for which you thus farre adventured. Moreover that you may see you are not come alone, you shall behold fifteen knights to accompany you, and new arrived for the lobe of the Lady Fezon, and to try their balow against the said Green knight their enemy. So, I say, to my Pallace, and salute my Daughter as my custome is to strangers, before they adventure their persons in battell with the Green knight, and having presented your selves before her in signe of lobe, you shall receive from her a King of Gold.

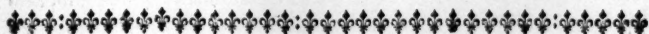
Sir (quoth Valentine) I shall be ready to do all rights and customes belonging to this place, and besides will obey you in all things whatsoever it shall please you to command me, This conference ended, the Duke went into the Castle, accompanied with Valentine and Orson. Having entred the Hall where the knights were assembled, Valentine beheld the Lady sitting among them, and making his way unto her with all duty and reverence, at last he saluted her thus : Lady, you whose beauty and fame is bruited through the world, the Gods preserve thee from the Green Knight, who I dare boldly avouch is not worthy to touch your superercellent lips. Moreover deare Lady, may it please you to understand, that Pepia the mighty King of France hath sent us hither,

ther, to present unto you the most valiantest man that lieth on earth, wherefore Lady behold him well, for he feareth no man nor any weapon, albeit he cannot speake: wherefore I assure you, that the Green Knight is not able to withstand his mighty force, nor make any resistance against him. Sir (quoth the Lady) I peld unto the King of France thousands of thanks, as also to you that have taken such paines to present such an one before me: But say, wherefore is this worthy Champion no better clothed, for me thinks he is of an excellent presence, well formed, straight and of a hardy countenance: and if he were washed and bathed in some excellent liquor, his flesh would be both white and soft. Lady (quoth Valentine) he never wore garment till it was very lately, and then I caused this Jacket you see him to wear, to be made fitting to his body: moreover I assure you, that when he came first to Paris he came like a wild savage, and naked man, so his flesh was so hard that he neither feared wind nor cold. While he was speaking these words, Fezon beheld Orson very wisely, for she was in love with him in her heart: but yet Valentine began againe thus to speake unto her. Lady, for my selfe, I must say somewhat also, therefore know this, that only for the love of you, have I adventured my selfe into this Climate to see if fortune will so much favour me, that I may heare you away from all comers, by force of Armes: and yet faire Lady one thing more have I to utter to you, which is, that I have made an Oath unto my selfe, that I will never returne again into France, till I have proved my fortune on the Green Knight and with him doe I intend to cope before I part hence, and either deliver him over into your hands as conquered, or suffer death, as many more before me have led the way. Alas Knight said the Lady, put not your selfe in danger for my sake, for methinkes it is folly in any man to endanger himselfe for the good of another: again, there be many valiant Knights have miscarried in seeking my love, and I the unhappiest living, to see these unfortunate dayes. Lady, quoth he, what I have vowed, I meane to accomplish: Why then faire Knight, God be thy speed, and therewithall gave forth two Rings of Gold, giving Valentine the one, and Orson the other, also they sate downe at the Table amongst the other Knights, and were welcommed with great feash.

feasting. Being set at the Table Pezon still fixed her eye most on Orson, and Orson upon her, as it were interchangeably glancing love-looks one to the other with exceeding gracious aspects. Now, in the midst of all these feasting the Green Knight (as his custome was) came thundering at the Gate, onely to have a sight of the beauteous Lady Pezon, for you shall understand that such were the conditions betwene him and the Duke Savary, that every day it should be lawfull for him to enter his Pallace to behold the Lady without contradiction. Being entred the great Hall, his manner was to cry out with a loud voyce, saying, Valiant Duke of Aquitaine, have you yet any more Champions to fight with me for the love of this Lady? The Duke answered, yea, I have yet within my pallace, fifteen valiant Knights that mean to try their fortunes upon thee, before they part my Countrey. When said the Greene Knight, let me see them, and likewise the faire Lady Pezon. Then said the Duke for you have free liberty. Herewithall the Green Knight entred the Hall, sternly beholding all the Knights one after another, at last, when he had gone through them all, he began to speake to them on this manner? Lords, ease and drinke, and make merry, for to morrowes day shall bee your last: and know that it will fall out to all your shares to bee hanged on the top of my tree, as many before you have been serbed. Valentine well marking his high words, grew exceeding angry, and at last began to answer him; Proud Knight, these baunts might well have been smothered within thy breast, for I tell thee, this day is come hither a Knight that shall hold thee tacked, more then any that ever yet encountred thee: and whereas thou triumphantly hast conquered many, he it is shall banquish thee, and leaue thy dead corps a prey for ravenous beasts. Now Orson understood that Valentine spoke all this of him, and also knew this to be the Green Knight, by whom so many valiant men had lost their lives; insomuch that he saluted him with a fierce visage, and whetting his teeth, leapt from the Table, and taking the Greene Knight by the middle threw him upon his neck, as if it had been a little Child, and having him at that advantage, espying a wall throw the Greene Knight with such violence against the same, that all the beholders thought he had verily broken his neck, for he lay as dead


dead, and so set him down again at the Table as befoze, and in a laughing gesture made signes that he would beare upon his neck three such as the Green Knight.

At this sudden action of Orsons, all the Knights there assembled began to laugh, and turning one towards another, said: How is he come indeed, that shall be the oberthrow of the Green Knight, but yet we cannot chuse but lament the wofull chance that shall befall the Lady Fezon, for he cannot speake, and yet is worthy all honour amongst the balianteft. The Lady on the other side, beholding his balow was instantly overcome with the love of Orson, that only he conquered her heart, and left all the rest hopelesse of ever gaying the Garland at which they aimed. By this time the Green Knight was again recovered, and counting it a deed of outrage, began thus to say in the foresaid presence; Lords, this wild-man hath deceived my trust, for he came upon me unawares, without saying any word, but I thinke good to let you understand, that in the morning I shall be better provided, and to the end I may make him an example to all that ever went befoze, I will ordaine for him a Gibbet of purpose higher and stronger then for any that have been vanquished by mee: and thereon will I hang up his beastly corpes; for beasts and birds to make their prey.



CHAP. XXI.

How Orson encountred the Greene Knight, and what followed thereof. Also, how Valentine attempted to fight with him, but could not overcome him.

 Orson perceibing the Green Knight displeased, and to threaten him, began as fast to chatter with his lips, making signes that he would meet him on the morrow and fight with him, and in token thereof, tooke off his hooide, and thzew it on the ground as his gage: which Valentine seeing, spake thus to the Greene Knight: Sir,

the wild-man challengeth you, and in token thereof hath throught down his gage, wherefoze if your stomacke serbe, I aduise you to take it up. Hereat the Green Knight fretted so exceedingly, that he replied neber a word. Duke Savary being present, said unto him: Sir Knight, I well perceibe, that the battell will grow strong between the wild-man and you, and I think that he will hold you tough play, to herefoze if you chance to conquer him also, you may well repozt of your valor throughtout the world, for he hath tryed some part of his courage already, and in banquishing him, you need not stand in fear of any. The Green knight hereat moze and moze intraged, swore by all his Gods, that ere the moztowes Sun was set, he would try the utmost of his strength, for he should neber return again from the field, but be hanged a great deale higher then any of the rest: and with these wordes left the Castle, and betook him to his Pabillion.

He being departed the rest of the Knights still remained with the Lady Fezon, making great joy and saying one to the other, that the day was come that the Green Knight should meet with his match. On the other side Fame had so spread abroad the worthy act of Orson the savage upon the Greene Knight, that multitudes of people resorted into the Pallace, to see and behold him, insonmuch that the Duke commanded the gates to be shut against them. Orson perceiuing the people so abundantly to approach, and hearing the noise, leapt up into a window, to behold the people, so that they willing to see him, and he desired to see them, at night they all departed to their houses. The people being departed, and supper ended, they passed the rest of the night in merriments, and so to bed. Valentine being brought to his Chamber went to bed making signes to Orson to lye downe by him; but he not regarding his kindnesse, laid him down upon the ground according to his wonted use, and so passed away that night. Mornynge being come, Valentine and Orson went into the Hall, where they found the faire Lady Fezon, accompanied with the other Knights, holding a dispute among themselves, who should first fight with the Green Knight. At last stood up a worthy Knight of France (called Gale-ram) and said, Lords so you be pleased, I am the man intend the first tryall, to this they agreed, and presently armed him. Being
armed

armed he came to the Lady, taking his leabe in all joy, and she to requite his kindnesse gave him free leabe, wishing the Gods to prefer be and keep him from all danger, so that he may return as Conqueror. The Knight most humbly thanked her, and so tooke Horse and basted him toward the Tent of the Greene Knight. The Greene Knight perceibing from farre, his approach, set spurs to his Horse, and encountred the famous Knight Galeram so fiercely, that he smote him off his Horse to the earth. The Green Knight seeing him on the ground, suddenly lighted from his Horse and toke off the Helme from his Head, Galeram fearing nothing but present death, yeelded to the mercy of him, but all in vaine, for without pitty, he first despoyled him off his armes, and after hanged him upon a tree, as he had done the rest before. Orson perceibing that Galeram was put to death, made signes with his hands that he would fight with him presently not letting him have any respite: but Valentine answered him againe by signes that he should withstand himselfe for a while, for he would first go try his owne strength on him. Whereupon he presently put himselfe in armes, and being armed, tooke his way towards the beauteous Lady to take his leabe, as it becommed him: being come before her, she grew wondrous sorrowfull, and yet at last she spake unto him on this manner: Alas faire Knight what madnesse is this in you to adventure your life for the love of such an unfortunate Lady as I: well, if thou wilt needs run into danger, go on, but I will invoke the Gods to aid and assist thee against thine and mine enemy, and so farewell.

Leabe thus taken of the Lady and the rest of the Knights, Valentine mounted his Horse, to take his way toward the Greene Knight. As he was ready to put forth, hee met with a worthy knight, who was likewise enamored with the love of the Lady and thus began to say to him: Sir, have a little patience I intreate you, and suffer me to go first. Friend (quoth Valentine) I freely grant your desire, goe and returne with victorie. This Knights name was Tyris bozne in Savoy, a man of great birth and libing, but riotously had run through his meanes leaving himselfe little, save only his Horse and Armes, having thus obtained leabe of Valentine, he also tooke leabe of the Lords there assembled, and so

departed unto the Tent of the Greene Knight. The Greene Knight perceiuing Tyris to approach, leapt out of his Habillion to welcome him. Tyris seeing him, said, Sir, presently mount thy Horse and defend thy selfe, for I breathe out defiance against thee: the Green Knight hearing him say so, called for his Horse, which presently was brought unto him, and putting his foot into the stirrup, suddenly seated himselfe in the saddle and betooke him to his speare and greene shield, preparing to take their course each at other; but at the first encounter, the Green Knight ran so furiously, that he smote Tyris quite through the body with his Spear, so that hee fell downe: starke dead; which he perceiuing, put a Cord about his necke, and hanged him up amongst the rest.

Valentine hearing of the death of Tyris was wonderfull sorrowfull, yet taking courage he recommended himselfe to the Gods: having thus done, he put spurs to his Horse and tooke his way speedily towards the Tent whereas the Greene Knight remained. When the Green Knight espied him, he was more fearefull of him then of all the rest: wherefore he called unto him, saying, Knight give eare to that I now shall say, seest thou ponder Tre, here shalt thou find hanging a Green shield, fetch it hither to me, and I will reward thee liberally. Sir (said Valentine) you have serbants enough of your owne, send them, for by me it shall neuer be fetched. By my Lato (quoth the Greene Knight) you shall either bring me the shield, or else knote this, you shall neuer conquer me. When Valentine had well considered these words, he spake, as touching the fetching of the shield, he baliantly rode towards the Tre, but he lost his labour, for he could not have it, whereat he was sorrowfull, and returning unto the Green Knight, in an angry mood, said thus unto him: go fetch thy shield thy selfe, for I cannot have it, wherefore cursed be that Magician that so fastned it, and an evill end betide him that sent me thither to fetch it. Friend (quoth the Green Knight) shall I tell thee wherefore I sent thee thither, it was for that this shield was giben unto me by a Faery, and therein remaineth such vertue, that no man be he neuer so strong can take it from the place where it is fastned, save only he alone, by whom I shall be overcome: and for the doubt I stood in of thee, therefore sent I thee thither: but now my doubt is

is satisfied, and therefore I advise thee to return to the place from whence thou camest, and save thy life, for seeing thee so faire a knight I am forced to pittie thee, and take no pleasure in thy death: from the which thou canst not escape, if thou fightest with me. Further, to the end thou shouldst not thinke I utter these words to abuse thy patience, know this that there is none living that can banquish me, except first he be the Sonne of a King, and next such a one as never sucked the Breasts of any woman. Now, if thou beest such a one, thou maiest overcome me, if not, thou dost but shorten thine own days by an untimely death. At these words Valentine took little pleasure, knowing that by this relation he could not be that man; but seeing that he was come to that enterprize, he would not turn till he had assailed his strength against him: and therefore with a loud voyce he spake thus unto the Green Knight: Valiant and redoubted knight, I well understand I am not the man by whom you shall be conquered, yet whatsoever I am, I will not depart hence untill I have fought with you. By the gods (quoth the Green knight) then thou hast some secret treason to worke against me, that thus thou runnest upon thy death wilfully, but ere I part with thee, I shall make thee know the price of this thy rashnesse, and therewithall leaped upon his horse, bidding one of his servants to bring unto him a booke of precious bakne, the vertue of it was such, that what wound soever he received, though never so mortall, it had power instantly to heale up the breach as divers times before he had made triall of the same.

After he had received this booke of oymment, he suddenly put spurs to his horse, and couching his spear in his rest, both ran their course so furiously, that their spears brake in many peeces. So bending themselves to the next course, they valiantly drew out their swords whereat Valentine behaved himself so nimbly, that he gave the Green knight so fel a stroke, that he cut him through his armor, insomuch that the blood issued out in great abundance. The Green knight feeling himselfe wounded lift up his arme to fetch a blow, that he stroke away a great peece of his thigh, and having thus wounded him, said unto him: You may see I can wield a sword as well as you, I told you before that you would fall under my hand, and anon I shall be faine to hang up your dead corps upon

a tree, as I have done the rest of the Knights that came before you, Pagan (said Valentine) baunt not thy selfe obermuch, for as yet I am not conquered, therefore defend your self, and therewith he gabe the Green Knight such a blow, that he smote away a great quarter of his shield, and the Green Knight at the same encounter brak his sword upon the helme of Valentine, and with the violence of the blow, felled him from off his Horse: Valentine being alwayes valiant, suddenly recovered himselfe upon his feet. The Pagan seeing him rise up, drew out a sharpe pointed knife, and threw it at Valentine, but he seeing it come, started a little aside, so that it missed him. The Green Knight being thus unarmed of his weapons, turned about his Horse, thinking to have recovered them againe, but Valentine being on the ground, and taking fit opportunity, cut off his Horse feet, so that both he and his Horse came tumbling to the earth. Being on the earth, he suddainly arose again, and then they were both together by strength of armes holding one another. But to be short, the bickering was so fierce between them, that they were both sore wounded.

The Pagan quickly healed his wounds with the Balme before spoken of. This fight continued so long that the day began to shut in, and both grew extream weary. The Green Knight was soe beryed that he could not overcome Valentine, and though he were eben spent in wearines, yet he proudly bore it out, saying, Knight gibe ober, for I perceibe thy wearines, and the Sun declineth, therefore it would be little honour for me to conquer thee. So return againe to Aquitaine, and rest there this night, and report, that there never encountred me so valiant a Knight as thou art.

But meet me to morrow, and before thy coming take leave of all thy friends, for thou shalt never return. Valentine accepted his kind offer, and was glad thereof, for he was weary and sore wounded. So going to his Horse which was in another field, he returned backe againe to the City. When Duke Savary and his Lords saw Valentine returne, they were joyfull, and received him in great honour: amongst the rest there assembled, was Orson, who ran and caught him in his Armes, and kissed him. Being come into the Pallace, the Duke demanded what tydings from the Green Knight. Sir (said Valentine) he resteth in his Pabillion,

tion, and I thinke he is of that puissant strength and courage, that there is not a man liuing able to banquish him. Valentine (quoth the Duke) you have escaped well, for neber did any return as yet but all have perished under the hands of this green knight, wherefore you have proved your self a baliant knight. Gracious Duke (said Valentine) of my Conquest ober him I can make but small boast: but to morrow there is appointed a new triall of manhood, and the victorie may light upon whom the Gods please to fauour. Having thus ended conference with the Duke, Valentine was unarmed, and then conducted to the Chamber of the Lady Fezon. The Lady was right ioyfull to see him return with life from the Combate of the Green knight. By this time supper drew on and the Duke taking his place at the Table, caused Valentine to be set on his left hand, at the upper end of the Boord, for the Duke did honour him in the highest degree that might be. Supper being ended, Valentine withdrew himself unto his private Chamber, and the Green knight rested in his Pavilion, where we will leaue him, and speake of Valentine, who being in his Chamber, made many Complaints.

CHAP. XXII.

How *Valentine* took good advise, and sent *Orson* on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Green Knight, and how *Orson* overcame him.



Valentine having appointed the morrow to fight with the Green Knight, began to be troubled wondrously as he lay in his bed, still bethinking him on what had happened the day before. At last when he had ruminated all his imaginations, he began to resolue upon this conclusion. I am not neither can be that Kings Son that should overcome the green knight, for I can neither remoue the shield he sent me for, neither was I nourished without the breast of a Woman. Again, I am very doubtfull of the Combate, and therefore stand wabering whereupon

upon to relpe. At last, he began thus to thinke : what if Orson should be armed in my stead, and thereby try the worst of fortunes wack : why, it shall be so. The break of the day appearing, he arose from his weary bed, and coming unto Orson, he told him by signes how that he should put on his Armour, and take his Horse, and make towards the Green Knights Habillion for to fight with him.

Orson understanding by his signes his hearts intent, leaped and danced up and down the hall ioyfully, making signes to Valentine again, that the pagan knight should never scape his hands, and denying his horse and armes, desired nothing of him save only a club of wood, such a one as he was accustomed to wield, and shaking his head made signes that he would have no other armoz against the Pagan knight. Valentine seeing him so resolute, gave him to understand by signes, that he must put on the same armoz, & ride upon the same horse that Valentine brought out of France, for that the knight should know no other, but that it was Valentine that came against him. The wilde man understanding the subtilty intended, agreed unto all that Valentine commanded him. So Orson was armed with the same Armour and horse which Valentine had employed the day before. Orson being thus armed (contrary to his accustomed manner) seemed a right personable creature, & made many signes, that he would overcome the green knight ere the noon-tide of the day, without either mercy or pittie: and in these signes he was so earnest, that he caused great laughter throughout all the assembly then present. Orson thus prepared he took his leafe of Duke Savary, and embraced Valentine, and made him signes to stand in fear of nothing, for before that he returned, he would bring the green knight with him, either alive or dead.

After this manner departed Orson, but before he took his horse, he had forgotten to take his leafe of the fair Lady Fezon, so returning back again to the Pallace, where the Lady late accompanied with her train, and espying her would have run unto her, and kissed her, for by signes he gave her to understand, that for the love of her, he would presently fight with the Pagan knight. The Lady in a smile, retorted back again (in sign) that she loved him
 excied

exceeding well, wishing him to heare himselfe balliantly, and at his returne backe againe, shee would grant unto him her lobe. Thus habing taken his leabe of the Lady Fezon, and the rest of the Ladies there assembled, hee betooke himselfe to his Horse and being gone from the Dukes Pallace, there was nothing so much talked on generally throughout the whole City, but that the Wild-man was gone to Combate with the Green Knight, whereat was much wonder. It was not long but Orson came unto the Pabillion of the Greene Knight, and without any words smote the top thereof with his Speare, signifying defiance. The Green Knight taking this rusticke salutation in great scozne, swore by Mahomet, that he would fetter his pride ere the Evening Sunne tooke rest, and therewithall mounted on his Steed, and couching his Speare in his rest, and entred the field against Orson.

Orson seeing him in a readinesse, seemed to gibe backe as halfe afraid, and presently habing gathered more courage, they encountered with such force, that both Horse and man fell unto the earth: Being both downe, they lightly recobered their feet, dreyo forth their Swords and laid one at the other right fiercely. The Green Knight being fired with anger and pride, smote Orson such a great blow, that he cut the Circle of Gold upon his Helme, and smote a great peece of his shield quite off, and wounded Orson so deeply, that with the outrage of the stroke, his Sword fell forth of his hand. Orson seeing the blood run down about him, was far more fierce then before, rolling his eyes, and shaking his head, at last with his Sword, he tooke the Gyant such a pat upon his head, that he entred the flesh, and bare a great part therof asfoze him, and his Sword sliding off his Head, tooke him on the arme so powerfully that the blood followed in great abundance. The Green Knight habing his former Balsamum, feared no wounds, which made Orson thinke it was in vaine any longer to use his Sword, sith hee could heale himselfe so quickly.

Upon this, Orson threwo away all his Armour and weapons, and suddenly ran upon the Green Knight, and caught him fast by the armes so strongly, that hee cast him on the ground: Being under him, Orson tooke off his helme, and held him so down, that the

Green Knight did yield to his mercy. Orson nothing regarding his submission would suddenly have taken away his life, if Valentine had not fallen in presently to his rescue by riding post to see the end of the Combate. Being come he made signes to Orson that he should not kill him, which Orson obeyed, but still kept him in



subjection. And at last, Valentine began to speake to the Green Knight, saying, Proud Knight, you well see that you are in the hands of your enemy, wherefore I think it fit that you suffer present death, for looke how you have done to the banquished Knights, by hanging them on ponder tree, so likewise you your selfe should be hanged upon the highest branch of al, above the rest. Alas (quoth the Green Knight) you seem to bee a man of pittie furnished with courtesie, therefore my request unto you is to spare my life. He (quoth Valentine) that shall I not, except upon condition: first that thou renounce thy Paganisme: and secondly, go with me into France to King Pepin, telling him that by Valentine and Orson
you

you were overcome in single combat: To all these conditions I willingly agree, and thereunto I take my oath to performe whatsoever I have already spoken.

Then Valentine made a signe unto Orson that he should rise, which he readily obeyed, but so, that he left him nothing about him to make any further resistance. Being upon his feet, he spake thus unto Valentine: Sir, it was you that combated against me yesterday, therefore you, and none but you did I expect this day also: but I see I am conquered by another, even the same that in the Dukes pallace threw me upon the ground. True (quoth Valentine) the very same. Why then (quoth the Green Knight) I shall reveale unto thee one secret more, and I beseech thee to grant unto me my request: Send this knight that hath conquered me to ponder it, and if he bring away with him the shield there fastned, then am I well assured, he is the man should conquer me, otherwise there is no man living can Triumph in my conquest. Hereupon Valentine made a signe unto Orson to fetch away that shield, who did as he appointed him, and coming nere the tree, he stretched forth his arme to take it downe, and suddenly it leapt into his hand, and so he brought it with him to the Green Knight. When he saw Orson have the shield, his heart smote against his sides, and throwing himselfe at his feet, would have kissed them: but Orson receiving signes from Valentine to the contrary, would not suffer him, but took him by the armes and lifted him up: Being upon his feet, he spake thus: Alas, I of all others owe unto you all my service, and all reverence, for now am I assured you are both a hardy and a valiant Knight, and amongst all other I confesse, that by conquering me, you have won unto your selfe everlasting fame.

Whereover, this assure your selfe, that he that conquers me, can be no lesse then son unto a King and Queen, and must be such a one as never sucked the breast of any Woman: and that this shall appear to be the truth, I shall further prove it by my sister Clerimond, for she hath a Head of Basse that telleth her the adventures and fortunes that to her and all of her generation shall befall. Likewise that this Head shall continue speaking untill such time as the most worthy of the world enter into the Cham-

ber where it now standeth, and hee being once entred, the said Head should lose his vertue, and is the only man to have my Sister Clerimond to wife, wherefore (faire knight) these things thus falling out as you see, I greatly desire you would wed my Sister, as the most hardiest and renownedest knight in the world.



C H A P. XXIII.

Orson having conquered the Greene Knight, *Valentine* caused him to bee Christned, and sending him unto King *Pepin*, had knowledge of his Father and Mother, by means of the Greene Knight.

The Greene Knight having made this motion of the marriage of his Sister, gave unto *Valentine* a King of gold, upon condition, that hee would carry that King unto her: which King *Valentine* accepted, and the Greene Knight yielded himselfe as a Prisoner, and is now going towards France, to accomplish that Oath that he before had given him. *Valentine* having received this King, never rested till hee had seen the Lady so commended unto him. After this the Greene Knight (by consent) was Crowned King of the Greene Countaine, and there held great state: presently upon this league of friendship concluded, hee gave commandment throughout all his Host, that every man would depart away from the confines of Aquitaine, and returne into their own Countries without doing any further damage unto Duke *Savarics* Country. The Pagan Army thus dismissed, *Valentine* and Orson tooke and led him as a Prisoner into the City of Aquitaine, whereat was no little joy: and the Duke with all his Lords received him with great Triumph into the City. The Greene Knight being thus brought as a prisoner to the Duke, began to say on this manner, my Lords you owe much honour unto the knight that hath conquered me: and further I gibe you to understand for certaine, that he can be no lesse then Son unto a King: and also, that he never sucked wo-
mans

mans breast, for if he had, he could not haue been my Conqueror : for so it was euer said by the Brazen head that standeth in the Chamber of my sister Clerimond. Quoth the Duke well may this carry some likelihood of truth, for he hath boyn himselfe betwixt bali-ant against you: wherefore I think it my part to honour him with my utmost endeabours.

By this time is this Worthie traine entred the Dukes Pallace, whether the Duke commanded his Daughters presence, and then he said unto her : Daughter, behold here the Green Knight, that hath for your lobe made spoyle of my Country, and I was no way able to repell him backe, but onely by this baliant Knight that Valentine hath brought along with him from the Court of King Pepin, who hath extraordinaryly freed us of our feares: wherefore this is my desire, that as he hath conquered yours and mine enemye, so he may also conquer your lobe, whereunto I right willingly agree that you will haue him for your Husband. The Duke hauing thus said, the Lady answered for her selfe in this manner : My redoubted Lord and Father, you know I am your Daughter, therefore there is no reason why I should resist, but doe submit my selfe to your dispose: for if I should do otherwise, it were in me great disobedience. And again, my Lord, you know promise is already past, that whosoever he was that could banquish the Pagan Knight, should for his labour receiue me as his Wife, Now my Lord, the day of deliberance is come, so then (according to your promise) you must giue him to mee, and I receiue him as my lawfull spouse : Otherwise, I shall make void the Edict before gone throughout the world, and you thought false in your promises. Daughter (quoth the Duke) ye haue spoke right graciously, and your answer pleaseth me highly, and not only mee, but all that are about us : wherefore it were not amisse to know of the Conqueror-Knight whether hee will haue you. If hee agree unto this match I shall giue him in dowry halfe my Country of Aquitaine. Hereupon Valentine standing by, demanded of Orson by signes whether he would haue the fair Lady Feron to Wife: who answered again by signes that he would neuer haue other. Then caused the Duke to be brought before him a Priest, who then contracted them : and so their time was passed with many disports.

These things thus ended, Orson made signes unto the Lady, that he would neber lie with her til he had gotten the use of his tongue and that his companton Valentine had conquered the love of the Lady Clerimond, Of all which, you shall hear moze hereafter.



CHAP. XXIV.

How the same night that *Orson* was made sure to the Lady *Fezon*
an Angell appeared unto *Valentine* : and of the charge
shee gave him.

The day being past with great banquetings and solemnity, wherein Fezon was assured unto Orson: the night approached, and every man betooke him to his rest: Amongst the rest, Valentine and Orson were lodged most richly in a goodly Chamber, and in the dead time of the night Valentine had the apparition of an Angell appeared unto him, saying: Valentine (know this) that in the morning thou speedily depart this Land, and take along with thee Orson, by whom the Green Knight hath been banquished, and without further delay get thee to the Castle of Ferragus, there you shall find the Lady Clerimond, by whom thou shalt understand of whence thou art descended.

This strange vision drabe Valentine into a thousand feares, and in great melancholly passed hée away the night, The day being broken, hée caused Orson to arise, and being ready they both hasted them unto the Dukes Pallace, where he found his Barons attending on him, and amongst the rest there present, the Green Knight, not long after entered the Duke, being entred, the Green Knight took an occasion to gibe him the tune of the day, and began to speak unto him on this manner: Most renowned Duke, I freely confesse my selfe banquished, and withall renounce all right unto your Daughter concluding an everlasting peace with you, upon condition, that you cause me to be baptized. Knight said the Duke, well have you said, I grant your request: When the Priest was come that should baptize him, Valentine being present, began thus



to say: Lords and the residue here assembled, may it please the valiant Duke to grant mee one boone, which is this, that the name of this Knight may bee called Pepin, it is the name of the most mighty King of France, even hee that nourished and fostered mee even from my Cradle. The Duke consented unto Valentines demand, so he was called Pepin after the baptisme, the Duke made a motion to Valentine and Orson for to wed his Daughter the beauteous Lady Fezon: but Valentine not allowing thereof, made this excuse that both he and Orson had vowed to go to Jerusalem ere they did attempt any other action, after the conquest of the Green Knight.

The Duke hearing this excuse, gave them leabe upon this condition, that Orson should take an oath to return again into Aquitaine, at his coming backe from thence. To this they both agreed. The same hour also the Green Knight tooke leabe of the Duke of Aquitaine, and went his way into France, to keep his promised faith, to King Pepin. Before his departure, Valentine asked him

him the ring that he had promised, who gave it unto him, saying: whatsoeuer he be that beareth this about him, shall neuer stand in feare of drowning, nor be affraid of false accusation. Then Valentine took the ring, and put it on his finger: so Orson and he took leaue, and departed the way towards the Lady Clerimond, to find out the Castle of Ferragus: and the Greene Knight likewise took his leaue for France, to yeld himselfe unto King Pepin. Much about this time Blandiman Squito to the distressed Lady Belysant was arrived at King Pepins Court, clad in the habit of a Pilgrim, and habing saluted the King, he wondred at this his unlooked for shape, and at last asked him from what sepulcher hee was come. Worthy King (said Blandiman) I am no Pilgrim, although I habe taken that shape upon me, but only to come more safely unto you, have I betaken mee to this habite: Therefore know, that I am a messenger sent from the high and mighty Lady your sister, that by treason and false accusations hath been banished her Countrey by the Emperour Alexander, and at this time lieth in great sorrow of heart, only for that you habe unjustly bent your heart against her, and sought no way to reliebe her misery.



CHAP. XXV.

How King Pepin came to the knowledge that Valentine and Orson were his Nephewes, by the report of Blandiman; And how the Greene Knight submitted himselfe, according to his promise made unto Valentine.



Blandiman habing delibered his message, the King began to demand of him where his sister was: Blandiman replied, I knowe right wel where she is, but I habe given her my word neber to discouer to any: But worthy King, if you make doubt of her loyalty, I shall bring you a man that will fight in her quarrell to probe her honest. Nay (quoth the King) I habe seen trial enough thereof already by the downfall of the Arch-Priest. Also, I habe made much meanes to heare of her, but cannot heare any

tydings of her : and indeed that which most of all griebeth me, is, that she was great with child when she was expulsed the kingdom. Neither am I assured, whether eber she was delibered of that burthen. My Lord (quoth Blandiman,) know this for truth, that my Lady laid her great belly in the Forrest of Orleance, and whilest she dispatched mee to get her the helpe of women, or eber I could returne, shee was delibered of two faire Sonnes, the one of which was carried violently from her by a Beare into the wood, shee never twist together, but she followed the Beare so long, till at last I found her in a dangerous sound upon the ground. I conning to her, tooke her up in my armes, and comforted her so well as I could, till being somewhat recovered, in woefull sighes shee unfolded unto mee the whole manner of the losse of her Child by the Bear: and for the other she had left it under a tree : I hearing her say so, hastied towards that tree wheras I left her, but being come thither, I could not find the other childe neither. And thus (woothy King) have I related unto you the whole story of your Sister, and her two Infants in the Forrest, and other tydings have I none, but this, that I am that Blandiman that you gave unto your Sister to attend her, when she married the Emperoz Alexander. The King gibbing eare unto this tale, at last said : Alas Blandiman, thy words strike mee into a thousand feares, what should become of my Sister, but yet seeing thou canst say no more, tell mee yet how long agoe this is that thou hast told unto mee. My Lord (quoth hee) it was even that day you met mee in the Forrest of Orleance, and I related unto you the pittieous tydings of your sisters banishment. This stricke the King into such admiration, that he began to recollect his wits, & then presently came into his minde the finding of Valentine in the Forrest, and how by the same Valentine, Orson was conquered in the same wood. Then he began againe to thinke on the story that Blandiman had told him, and thereby knew that these were the two babes brought forth by his sister, wherefore he sent for his Quen, and other Ladies, to let them understand what Blandiman had declared, saying: My Lords I have long time nourished & brought up in my Court three pious Children : and now it plainly doth appeare they are Sonns to an Emperoz, and my near kinsmen, Valentine the one whom

I found in the Forrest of Orleance, brought forth there by my sister Bellyfant, in the time of her exile: and Orson who was likewise banquished by Valentine, to be his naturall brother, and both Sons to the Emperoz of Greece. At these tydings all the Court was wondrous ioyfull, save only Haufray and Henry, who in outward shew seemed glad, but were in their hearts very sorrowfull, for above all other they desired the death of Valentine, that next him they might worke their wills of their youngest brother Charlemaine, against whom they chiefly opposed themselves, as hereafter will more plainly appeare.

But to returne back againe unto Blandiman, who hearing the King to speak thus much of the two children, demanded of the King if he knew in what Country they were? Why (said the King) one of these I have brought up in my Court along time, in such fashion, that he is become a right baliant knight, and by his valor hath conquered his Brother, being a wild-man living in the Wood at Orleance like a beast, and one that did much damage to all the Country thereabout. Having conquered him, he brought him to my Court, where having lived some small time, they both departed and toke their way unto Aquitain to fight with a right worthy Champion called the Green Knight, and since their departure I never heard what became of them. Sir (said Blandiman) according unto the tale you have told, I remember well, that never Aquitaine met I two such, but I am much troubled that I knew them not. So the King musing at these accidents, caused Blandiman to be highly feasted, and held as a Companion amongst his other Lords: Now it happened, that on the same day the Greene Knight (of whom we have before made mention) arrived in Paris at the Kings Court: as soon as he came into the presence of the King, he saluted the King with great reverence. The King seeing him all in Armoz, marvelled much thereat, and at last demanded the cause of his so appearing, whom he was, and wherefore he came: The Green Knight replying again on this manner, Honourable King, know that I am descended from the Sarazens, both by Father and Mother: and true it is that I am that knight that for the love of the Lady Pezon, Daughter to the Duke of Aquitaine, I have for one whole yeare holden the Duke as my Vassal,

and

and in my subjection, and habing him thus under me, I tooke a Truce with him for six months upon these conditions, that if within that time hee found not forth a Knight, that by force of Armes should conquer me, I was to have his fair Daughter Fezon to wife: On the other side, if I were conquered, I should remove away my siege, and depart out of his Territories, without doing him any further dammage. So it is that a long time I was fought withall, by divers valiant knights of all Countries, yet there was not any that could overcome me, but endured death, and were still hanged upon a tree, at last it so fell out, that there assailed me two worthy knights, the one named Valentine and the other Orson. Valentine fought with me one whole day, wherein he boze himselfe so bravely, that night coming on, we were forced to gibe over, all wounded, tired, and weary. The next morning when the Battell should be again renewed, his fellow Orson armed him in Valentines armor, entred the field in most fierce and disdainfull manner offering me defiance: I scorning any Competitor, addrest out my selfe against him, but little abailed my strength, for in the end he overcame me, and would have taken away my life, had not Valentine come in upon us, and rescued mee upon condition, first, that I should forsake Mahomet. Secondly, that I should come unto you and yeld my selfe at your command, and to stand to your censure either in life or death. Again, when I received Baptisme, he caused me to be called Pepin, and so is my name.

The King habing heard al this long story from a green knight, made this answer in the presence of all his Barons: Welcome to us, and of your company we are right glad, live with us in our Court, and be jocund, for I freely grant you your life: and promise you further, that if you will tarry with us in this country, I will endow you with many faire lands and possessions. The king shewing himselfe thus gracious, demanded of him where these knights were that had conquered him: (Harry quoth the Green K.) I left them both in Aquitain, with the valiant D. Savary, who holdeth them in as great respect as any that are remaining in his court.


Thus you may now perceibe, that by the words of Blandiman, and the Greene Knight. King Pepin had perfect intelligence of his beauteous sister, and his two valiant Nephewes. Af-

ter all these things happened, King Pepin made a solemne voto, that he would go himselfe in person into Greece, to tell the Emperoz of these gladsome tydings, and to take order to send abroad into all lands to find her out.



CHAP. XXVI.

How King Pepin departed from France towards Greece, to beare these tydings : and how before his return, he warred upon the mighty Sculdan, who had beleagred Constantinople.

 King Pepin habing put himselfe in a readines to depart into Greece, went forth, and before much time was spent, he arrived at Rome. The Pope hearing of his approach, received him with great honoz, and much Feasting. Upon a day as he sat at dinner with the Pope, in his Pallace pontifical, ther came tidings unto him, that the great Souldan of Egypt had besieged Constantinople. The knight that brought this message, after his salutations ended, began thus to proceed: Holy Father, the Sarazens with much power have besieged, and wrongfully ober-run Constantinople, and hee gave mee charge to crabe pour aid against these enemies of Christendome. When the Pope understood these ill-welcome tydings, hee was dziben into a woondrous dumpe, not knowing any present way to send them reliefe: but King Pepin being in presence, comforted him greatly, and said: Holy Father, take no care for this businesse, for I request but a competent summe of mony and men: and I shall leade them to Constantinople with such a couragious heart, that I shall put the Souldan and all his Forces to the worst, such an inveterate hatred beare I against these Pagan devills. The Pope hearing him so resolute, thanked him for his couragious heart, and said unto him, right Christian king, seeing thou dost professe thy self in person to undertake this service, I shal with all convenient speed provide for a businesse of such import. Presently hereupon by a day all things were prepared, and with an Army of thirtie thousand Romanes King Pepin departed, and as soon as possible hee

hee couls, he arribed at Constantinople. Being thither come, hee found the City round begirt, and the Citizens in great feare of the Souldans army, betaking themselves into the City, keeping the same against all the forces of the Pagans.

The Emperoz himselfe was forced to retire into the City, and being cooped up in so small a roome, his troubled thoughts evermore ran upon the Lady Bellysant, whom he had cruelly banished, alwaies fearefull that shee was dead, for it was now full Twenty Winters past since the time of her exile. By this time is King Pepin come within two miles of Constantinople, and there landed his men, raising Habillions, pitching of Tents, and ranging his forces into battell aray. The Souldan habing knowledge of his arriball, as also of his provision, was much abashed thereat, and with al diligence returned to his strong Habillion: and being set down in his magnificēce, ther came unto him certain of his campe, fearfully and doubtfully saying thus unto him; Great and mighty Souldan, we come to gibe you true intelligence, that there is lately arribed to the number of two hundred thousand Romanes to bid us present battell, under the conduct of Pepin King of France. Wherefore it onely resteth now that you take suddain advice how to prevent and resist these forces. Peace screech-owles (quoth the Souldan) be not affraid, for you are deluded by some false report, the whole Romane Nation is not able to furnish forth such an Army: So on, I say, couragiously, for I swear by Mahomet ere long I shall bring under my subjection both the Kingdom of Rome and France, also. Wherefore call up your Troopes, plant them, and put our Squadron in a readinesse for to receive them.

The morrow following King Pepin set his army in order of battell, fiercely to assault the Pagan host, and secretly sent a Letter to the Emperoz, being in the City, whereby he requested the Emperoz, that they within the City should put themselves in readinesse, and so issue out upon the Pagans on that side: for King Pepin and his Companies would receive them on the other side: then being all encompassed about, there was hope to get the day of the Sarazens.

The Emperoz received these Letters joyfully, and did as King Pepin commanded them, and issued forth of the City, bidding battell to the Sarazens. They were no sooner entred the field, but they perce^d b^y

perceibed the army of King Pepin, marching on with banners displayed, and noise of Trumpets sounding in most couragious manner. This made the Pagans to looke about, and the Souldan calling to him two of his hardiest men of war, commanded them secretly to goe through the Hoast of the Chzistians, and if it were possible to number them. These two did as the Souldan commanded, but being come nêr the hoast of King Pipin, the grêen knight espyed them comming doونه a little hill, drawing somewhat nêr, he discerned they were Sarazens, and presently put spurs to his horse, he ran against them with such fury, that his spear brake upon his own thigh: The Sarazens seeing him run so fiercely did not flêe, but receibed him valiantly, as hereafter followeth in the next Chapter.



CHAP. XXVII.

How the Green Knight Justed with the two Sarazens, and having slaine the one, the other fled, and how King Pepin and his Hoast were lodged within *Constantinople*.



THE Grêen Knight habing recobeted a new spear, he ran fiercely against both the Sarazens, and hitting one of them in a very dangerous place, smote him to the earth, so that hee never rose, then making against the other, he gave him such a wound, that suddenly he fled away, King Pepin seeing this accident, presently assailed the Souldans hoast, and Myllon Daugler slew the King of Aquile, and thre other ere he gave over the field with many and divers other worthy deeds of Chivalry, The Souldan seeing him so play the Debill in his Hoast, cryed out to follo Daugler who had made such habocke: so they did as he commanded, pursuing him so close on both sides, that at length they cut off one of his Horses thighes, forcing him to fall upon the earth, and had there perished, had not the Grêen Knight (maugre all the Sarazens) thrust himself into the presse, slaying and beating down as many as made any resistance, and in the end so relieved Daugler, that he freshly hogled him, and brought him clean out of danger.

ger. After this, they both joyned together in such furious out-
rage that they spared none that came in their way. Fierce was this
battell, and indured long, but King Pepin and his men made great
slaughter among the Pagans: But notwithstanding all this their
valor, they had lost the day had it not been for the Emperoz that
with his host valiantly assailed the Pagans on the other side, and
made amongst them a very bloody slaughter. The King seeing the
courage of the Emperoz so mighty, gathered together againe his
scattered Troopes, and entred into the battell with great fury, and
now were the Pagans begirt round about. As soon as the King
came unto the sight of the Emperoz, he said unto him: great Prince
show thy self right valiant, and this day ere night, I shall tell thee
tydings of the faire Lady Bellysant.

These words added fresh courage unto the Emperoz, who cryed
out to his men, Courage for Constantinople, and he that wins ho-
nour shall be richly rewarded. And with these words entred again
into the thickest of the battell: where he, King Pepin, and the great
Knight so valiantly behaved themselves, that which way soever
they turned, they made way before them.

Now began the Sarazens to doubt whether they should ever e-
scape away alive: and therefore fearing the worst, betooke them-
selves to flight: But their flight being espyed by the King of Sla-
vonian, who led the rear-ward for the Souldan, presently rushed into
his troops consisting of fifty thousand fighting men, making with-
all so great a shout, that it seemed by the sound thereof, their part
got the better. The Emperoz and the King perceiving their com-
ming, wisely considered that their men were tyred and out-worn,
and the enemy fresh and lusty, founded a retreat and retired them-
selves and all their Souldiers into the City. The Souldan seeing
this, followed upon them, and strongly besieged the City round a-
bout, so that neither the Emperoz nor the K. could issue out thereof.
Thus they abode, till they were well nigh famished, thinking ther-
by utterly to overthrow the Christians. So leave we them, and re-
turn again to Valentine and Orson, who for the love of Clerimond
have adventured, as you have already heard.



CHAP. XXVIII.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* arrived at the strong Castle wherein fair *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen Head they had knowledge of their Parents.



After many dayes of travell, at last *Valentine* and *Orson* lighted upon an Island, in which Island stood a Castle strong and impregnable, the cobering whereof was of shining mettall, glittering so in the Sun that it drazbe *Valentine* into suspition, that it was it whereunto the *Green Knight* had directed him, to have a sight of the faire Lady *Clerimond*. At all adventures he maketh way towards this Castle, and at last entred into this Island by one of the Ports thereof. Being entred, he demanded who was owner of that castle which appeared so sumptuous to the eye? Answer was returned, that the castle was in the keeping of the faire *Clerimond*, sister unto the Gyant *Ferragus*, and builded by a mighty man in substance, a Sarazen: the which Sarazen, amongst all other his excellent workes done in that castle, he caused one chamber to be richly adozned: of the which chamber more shall be spoken of in that place.

Whereover, it was told unto *Valentine* amongst other things, that in the chamber stood an excellent Pillar made by Art, upon the which Pillar stood a Head of Braasse, composed along time before by the Pregonancy of a Faier, the which head was of such an excellent composition, that it gave answer to any thing that was demanded. *Valentine* hearing this strange relation of the castle, was right glad, for now he was verily perswaded that this must needs be the very castle he had so long time sought, and wherein the *Greene Knight* told him he should find his sister, so highly praised of all nations for her excellent beauty. Having gathered knowledge enough, he lest questioning any further, and went on his way accompanied with *Orson*, to see if he could get entrance into this castle. By this time they were come to the gates thereof, where

where thinking to enter, they were resisted by ten sturdy knights, that kept the gate night and day.



When they saw Valentine and Orson make protest to enter, they said unto them: Lords or what ever ye be, with-draw your selves backe, for into this castle entred none, of what birth soever, without the leabe and licence of a maiden, to whom we (as guard do appertaine, Why (quoth Valentine) goe tell her, and aske whether it be her pleasure we enter or not? Whereupon one of them entred into the chamber where faire Clerimond was, and kneeling unto her, said: Lady before your gate stands two gallants that would enter your castle, they seem fierce and couragious, full of high spirit, and men far disagreeing from the lawes and religion of our countrey: Now faire Lady say, shall they have entrance? descend (quoth the Lady) while I go forth into a window to take a view of them, and let the gates be surely kept, for I mean to question with them my selfe. The Porter did as she commanded, then Clerimond that was well language, leaned out of a window upon

a Cushion covered with gold, and said unto Valentine: what are you, that dare offer to enter my Castle without leave? Lady (quoth Valentine with an undaunted courage) I am a Knight that travel-
leth this way, and would gladly speake with that head of Basse that remaineth within this castle, if it be your pleasure, because (as I do understand, it resolbeth doubts. Knights (quoth the Lady) upon these termes you may not enter: but if you can bring me any certain sign from one of my Brethren, either from King Ferragus, or the green Knight Lord of Tartary, then may you freely enter this castle: Or by one other meanes yet may you enter, that is, by the Seneschall of this place, with whom you must run six courtes with your Spear to try your haloz: wherefore now be advised, either fetch me some certain tokens from one of my Brothers, or try your fortune in single combat, as I have told you. Lady (quoth Valentine) against your Seneschall I dare adventure, for I had rather win my entrance by ponderous blowes, then by entreats & flattery speeches. This choice chose Valentine rather then to bewray the ring which he had brought along with him, given him by the Greene knight, to present to his sister Clerimond. The Lady seeing his resolute hardinesse, suddenly fell in love with him, and presently went into the chamber where the head of Basse stood and said thus unto it: What is that knight of courage that would so gladly enter this castle? Lady (quoth the head) of that knight, shall you know nothing, untill such time as you have brought him before me. Clerimond at this answer seemed very forgetfull, for he was greatly in love with Valentine,



CHAP. XXIX.

How (when as Valentine was before the Castle talking with the Guard) Clerimond bewayled the love of Valentine, And how he Justed for the entrance, and overcame the Seneschall.



Clerimond pondering in her mind the words of Valentine, being overcome with affection, said on this manner: Ah, Valentine is valorous, and beautifull, and if I have power over the head of Basse, I shall never take

take other husband then this knight. Hereupon she sent for the Seneschall, and told him that this knight would enter the Castle. The Seneschall hereat intraged, began thus: Lady, if he be so hardy to attempt it, I shall quickly make him knowe that he cometh too late to gaine your love.



Seneschall (said the Lady) since it must be so, goe with me presently, and so he departed to put himselfe in Armes. Being armed he mounted his horse, couched his spear in his rest, & withall issued out of the gate in readinesse. The Lady also got into a window to behold the combat. When Valentine saw the Seneschall to come towards him, he couched his spear, and putting spurs to his horse, they met so fiercely, that their spears brake in peeces: presently having a new supply, suddainly they met so fiercely, that they fell to the ground horse & man: but Valentines horse got up with his master. Valentine being thus saved by his horse, said unto the Seneschall, Rise up and newly mount your selfe, for there is no honor in

conquering an enemy at advantage. Whereupon the Seneschall was freshly mounted, & new spears given them again. Then took they a fresh carriere, and herewithall Valentine so incountred him about the head, that he bore away his helme, and threw both horse and man down upon the earth. The Seneschall seeing himselfe in danger, said thus unto Valentine; Knight, I know not from whence you are, nor of what parentage, but never in my life found I a man of thy valour: wherefore I yeld, and withall give thee leave to enter this Castle at thy pleasure (only upon this condition that thou speake not unto the Lady Clerimond without my leave.) Quoth Valentine thou hast requested that which I will not grant, for know it was for her love that I came hither, and though I never yet saw her, yet are my thoughts on fire. Therefore from hence I will never part, till I have both spoken with her, and also with the brazen Head. The Lady all this while standing at the window wondred what conference passed betwene these two Champions, and at last thus said unto one of her maidens; See how indiscreet this Seneschall is, to fight with such a valiant Knight, who long since might have taken away his life. When Valentine saw the great pride of the Seneschall, and that he stood out with him, being his Prisoner, he suddenly ran against him another course, and therewithall gave him so deadly a stroke, that he ran him clean through the Body, so that he fell off his horse stark dead; at the which the Lady Clerimond was exceeding joyful, commanding them to set open the gates, and that Valentine should be brought up unto her into the great Hall. When that the Lady had beheld Valentine well, she came towards him, & said unto him in this manner: Knight, you are most welcome, for I never saw a more valiant and courageous man all the daies of my life: Enter my Castle, for it appeareth by your valour, and chivalry, that you are descended from the loynes of some Royall Stocke. Lady, know this for a certainty, my name is called Valentine, a poore adventurer; for neither my selfe, nor this my Companion ever knew from what Stock we were descended. He was nourished by a beast in the Forrest, and lived there like a wild-man, till whereas I conquered him by my sword. Besides, he never spake in his life more then you see at this instant. Therefore Lady thus far have I travelled

belled to get knowledge of my Parents, but cheifly to gaine the
 love of you being so faire a Lady.



CHAP. XXX.

How *Valentine* shewed *Clerimond* her brothers Ring, which the
 green knight gave him, and how he questioned with the Bra-
 zen head, which told him from whence he was descended



Valentine having purchased free enterance by ober-
 comming the Seneschal; at last he shewed the King
 that the green knight had giben him, and smiling
 delibered it the Lady, who gladly receibed the token
 saying: fair knight had you shewed this ring when
 you first craved accessie into this Castle, you had neber endured the
 danger that you have now escaped; but sith it hath pleased you, to
 try your baloz, I cannot better commend you, then to admire
 your brave couragious heart. Whiles *Valentin* and the Lady were
 thus talking together, the tables were spread, the Lady sat down, &
Valentine was also placed just against her, in whom she tooke her
 greatest felicity, as he in her: dinner being ended *Clerimond* arose
 from the table, & taking *Valentine* by the hand, said thus unto him.
 Sir well have you purchased your welcome, deserbing to enter in-
 to my prieste chamber, and so you shall, even that chamber, where
 in the brazen head standeth, & which head shall declare all that you
 can desire, and make no doubt but it will tell you most joyfull tyd-
 ings; toheresore both you and your Companion come along with
 me, for I as gladly long to hear, as you desire to be heard. Hereat
Valentine grete exceeding joyfull, first, for that he should now un-
 derstand that which he long desired to know: secondly, that the
 Lady used him so graciously. Thus taking their way out of the
 hall, she brought them into that chamber: being come unto the doze
 thereof, and thinking nothing, they found the Chamber doze
 guarded on this manner: On the one side a grimme, fearefull
 and ugly shapen Willaine, strong, and crooked, armed with a club
 of iron upon his necke, which offered to make resistance. On the

other side of the chamber dooze stood a most fierce Lyon, these two continually kept the dooze that none could enter without the Ladies leave, or else fight both with the Villaine and Lyon, Valentine perceiving these two watchmen to make resistance, demanded of the faire Clerimond the meaning thereof, who answered: These two you see here, are to keepe this dooze that none may enter, without fighting with them, and that others have perished in their presumption, and againe, the Lyon is of such fiercenesse that he will suffer none to passe, except the Son of a King, and to such she shewes her selfe very loving.

Lady (quoth Valentine) happen what will, yet I mean to try my fortune with the Lyon, and by main strength caught him about the body, whereat the Lyon forsooke him, and let him passe. Orson likewise assailed the Villaine, and ere he could be ready to lift up his club of iron, he took him by the middle so strongly, that he threw him against the wall, tooke away his club, and gave him such a blow, that he tumbled him on the ground, and had it not been for the Lady Clerimond, hee had slain him in that place. Being both thus banquished, the gate was opened, and they entered the chamber wherein they might see all the world could afford, as Gold, Azure, Rubies, Sapphires, with great multitudes of precious stones, within this Chamber was four Pillars of Jasper, marvellous rich; of which two of them are yellow as most fine Gold: a third green, more green then grass: a fourth more redder then a flame of fire. Betwixen these pillars was a precious stone called an Amethyst, more rich then the heart of man can devise; in midst of which stood a head of brass, set upon a rich pillar. Valentine wondering at the riches of these objects, fixed his eyes onely upon the Head, longing to heare what it would publicly open concerning his birth. At length, when every voice was silent, the Head began to speak after this manner: Thou famous Knight of royall parentage, thou art called Valentine the balliant, of whom it may justly be said there was never the like appeared before me. Thou art the man, who of right ought to marry with the Lady Clerimond, thou art son to the Emperour of Greece, and thy mothers name is Bellysant: sister to King Pepin King of France, who by wrong suggestions hath been banished her Country and Husbonds bed: know this,

this, thy mother is in Portugall, in the Castle of Ferragus, who hath had the keeping of her these twenty years. Pepin is thy uncle; and the wild-man which hath ever accompanied thee is thy natural Brother: you two were deliuered by the Emperesse Belysant, in the Forrest of Orleance, and being brought forth, thy companion was taken away by a ravenous Bear, and by her he was nourished in that wood amongst the rest of her whelpes, and neuer sucked he any other: for thy part Valentine, thou wast found the very same day in that Forrest by King Pepin, who hath nourished thee tenderly, and brought thee up to mans estate: Further, thus much I shall also tell thee, that this thy brother here present, shall neuer haue use of his tongue till a thread be cut vnder the same, and then thou shalt hear him speak plainly. Therefore proceed as thou hast begun, and thou shalt prosper: for my time is at a period, sith thou art come to enter into this chamber, and so bending it self towards him in token of reuerence, it neuer after spake more.

Valentine marking well all that the head had uttered, fell upon the bosome of his brother Orson, and Orson on his, and with kind embraces they counter-changed each other. The Lady seeing all this, began thus to break out into speeches, alas, courteous knight, I of all other ought most to rejoyce at this your happy arrivall, for by you am I freed of a ten years hearts griefe, which I haue hardly undergone heretofore. Again, by this brazen head I understand that you haue euer been the Man on whom my affections should rest, and whereunto I gently agree, (if you please) and take you for my wedded Lord.

Lady (quoth Valentine) I accept you as my Wife, who was given to mee by my brother the Green knight, that was banquished by my brother Orson before the City of Aquitaine, only this I shall request, that as your brother the Green knight hath forsook Mahorment, so you would do the like. Sir (quoth she) I shall gladly pleasure you in any thing you shall command me, and be obedient to your will in every point, whilst you and I shall live. And so great joy betided all the Inhabitants of this castle, for they were right glad of the tydings that the Brazen head had declared unto them. After this, the reputation of Valentine increased more and more, but all their former joy and gladnesse was suddenly eclipsed by

by the treachery of her brother Ferragus, as hereafter shall be more fully declared.



C H A P. XXXI.

How the Giant *Ferragus* had knowledge of all that past between his Sister and *Valentine*, by the meanes of one *Pacolet* a Dwarf, and an Enchanter.

Now shall you understand, how within this castle toher Clerimond was, dwelt a dwarfe (named *Pacolet*) which the Lady had nourished and brought up of a child, bestowing much cost to have him taught in Scholes. This *Pacolet*, being of more age then stature, grew exceeding witty & at last he studied the blacke art, & therein grew so famous in negromancy, by enchantment he had composed a little horse made of wood; in the head of the horse he had so artificially conbeyed a pin of wood; & every time he mounted on his back to ride abroad, he could turn that pin toward the place he would go unto, and suddenly hee would be in the same place without danger, for the Horse could run through the Aire more swift then any bird. This *Pacolet* being in the Castle, observed the behavioꝝ of *Valentine*, and when he had fit time, he advertised himselfe for Portugall, to beare netes to *Ferragus*, how all matters had passed at the castle. So he betook himself to his wooden horse, and in a moment of time (setting the pin for that part) he arrived there, according to his desired wish, and related the story unto *Ferragus*. When *Ferragus* heard his tale he grew exceeding angry against *Valentine*, for that he should have his sister in marriage: also he grew enraged at her, that she would grant her love unto him (being a Christian knight) swearing by his gods, to take rebenge upon them both: but at this while he dissembled unto *Pacolet*, bidding him return, and beare this message to *Clerimond*, that the knight *Valentine*, who shall have her to wife, is right welcome, and that ere long I will come in person to visite them, accompanied with a gallant troope of Nobles, and then shall their nuptiall

nuptiall be royally solemnized : so Pacolet took leave and got him to his Horse, and was in an instant come home againe. Being come, he presently went into the presence of the Lady Clerimond, and said unto her ; Madam, I have been in Portugall with your brother Ferragus, who is glad of your choice with Valentine, and promiseth ere long to bee here in person, and to make up a royall marriage. At this tale the Lady stood amazed, and at last began to answer him thus : Ah Pacolet, is this true that thou hast told : Ape me, the gods defend my Brother from plotting any Treason against mee, for I am well assured hee could never abide a knight of France, nor any other that is a Christian ; I am right angry that thou didst not acquaint me with thy departure, for I had serious businesse for thee to do, which was to have enquired there for a woman-christian, one that of long time hath had her abiding with my brother Ferragus, in the Castle that he now holdeth.



CHAP. XXXVII.

How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditious journey into *Portugall* to see the Lady *Bellysant Valentines* mother, and of his returning backe, and the newes that hee brought.

The Lady having ended her tale, Pacolet made her this answer. Lady, seeing you are so earnest, I shall for your sake make another journey into Portugall, and before to morrow mid-day I shall bring you tidings whether she be there or no. Valentine hearing him say so, replied; that canst thou not doe except the devil be in thee: The Lady Cleimond said unto Valentine, let him alone, for by Art hee hath so provided, that he will ride more then a thousand miles a day. Hereat Valentine marvelled much, and calling Orson unto him, he cut the thred from under his tongue that bindzed his speech; which being done, he spake presently, where he related the story of his life led in the Forrest, which held them the most part of that evening. On the morrow according as Pacolet had promised, he was found in the Hall before Valentine, saying unto him on this manner; sit



I am returned from Portugall, and have seen your mother in good health: Friend (quoth Valentine) thou art welcome, for it is thee I only desire to heare of. Lobe (quoth Clerimond) be not too hasty, for if my brother come not hither, we will go into Portugall to him, and then we shall both have our hearts desire. Nay surely (quoth Pacolet) your brother will come hither: I (quoth the Lady) but I stand in fear of him, least that he worke some treason against us. For this last night I dreamed a fearefull dreame, at which I was very much affrighted, and thus it was: I dreamt I was in a great water, in the which I should have perished, had it not been for a great face that drew mee out thereof. Being out, me thought I saw a Griffin issue out of a cloud, who with his talons tooke mee up, and carried mee I know not whither. Lobe (quoth Valentine) give no respect at all to dreames, for they be but delussions of a melancholy minde. 'Tis true (quoth shee) but they trouble me every night. Having ended this discourse, they entred
into

into a faire Arboz, garnished with great bariety of Flowers, re-
posing themselves some few hours in long dalliance: where these
leave them, and you shall heare that the same day arrived Ferragus
the Traitor at the Castle of Clerimond.

The Lady hearing of his coming, presently went to welcome
him, and he as kindly embraced her, and said unto her: Sister a-
bove all creatures living I have most desired to see you, tell me I
pray you, which is the Knight you mean to make your husband.
This faire brother is the man, whereupon Valentine saluted him
in great reverence. Ferragus said thus unto him: faire Knight, be
welcome into these quarters, for the love of my sister Clerimond
For seeing it is so fallen out that you have conquered my brother
the green knight, and sent him into France, causing him to be
christened, even so have I a great desire to be baptized, to become
a Christian and follow your Religion.

Valentine believed all these words which he had spoken, but un-
der these faire promises he smothered treason, yet at the last Va-
lentine began thus to say unto him: Sir, it is reported to mee that
within your Castle for the space of these twenty yeares, you have
maintained a christian-woman who is mother unto me, whom I
would gladly see; her name is Bellysant, sister to Pepin King of
France, and wife unto the Emperour of Greece. By Mahomet,
said Ferragus you say truth, and to the end your eyes may behold
her, you shall go along with me into Portugall, so shall you rightly
be informed whether she be the Lady you seeke for, or no? Gra-
mercy (saith Valentine) and so Ferragus left him, and said unto
his sister Clerimond after this manner: Sister, my soules joy, I
desire your advancement more then any thing on the earth, and am
glad you have found out so worthy and balliant a Knight for your
espousall; wherefore to knit up all at once, my desire is, that you
would go with me into Portugall, and there with the consent and
applause of all my Nobles, we intend highly to solemnize your
Baptistall day.



C H A P. XXXIII.

How *Valentin* and *Orson* were betrayed by the treachery of *Ferragus*, and how hee committed them to prison, with their wofull lamentations.



Ferragus having thus gotten their good wills to depart for Portugal, put all his ships in a readines, and packing up all their provision, they put forth to Sea. Being now at sea: Ferragus sel from all his former words of comfort, & began to plot the death of *Valentine* & *Orson*. In the dead time of the night, when $\frac{1}{2}$ two brethren were at rest in their Cabins, hee caused them secretly to be taken forth of their beds, and committed them to bands, muffling their eyes also that they could not see: Now, when *Clerimond* saw what was done unto her lobe, she fell into an extreame agony, and with watry tears began thus to vent her lamentations. Alas dear *Valentin*, our ioyes are suddenly turned unto sorrow: thou hast bought my lobe at too dear a rate, when thou art not only thus mis-used, but even in danger of thy life: Cursed be the day of my birth, for so much danger hast thou purchased my lobe. Alas, alas, what shall I do? Rent heart, weep forth my eyes, when such a balliant, hardy & most magnanimous Knight must thus be tortured for my sake? Thou hast deceived the trust I put in thee, by working so foule an act against my lobe: Thou hast robbed me of all ioy, and brought upon me an untimely death. Further, know this, that if you put to death these two Knights, you carry to your grave the name of a villaine. Let them alone, their death will woork you small content: or if there be no remedy, spare them and seize first upon mee, and cast me into the sea, for I would not live to see such two innocents falsly put to death without desert. Pea, even so much was the Lady perplexed, that with very hearts sorrow shee would have slain her selfe, or else violently have leaped ober-board into the Sea.

Ferragus perceiving her in this desperate fit, gave strict command that shee should be well attended by some of his Barons, and

and especially that she should not so much as speake a word with either of the prisoners, and leauing her to her laments, the Christians both Valentine and Orson fast in bands. Valentine perceiving himselfe thus betrayed, began thus to bemoane his hard hap: Alas quoth he, how contrarily hath fortune dealt with mee? I have spent all my youth in trabel and danger, only to finde out the parents that begot mee? and see eben now when hope had wel-nie set an end to al my sorrows. I am unhappily fallen into the hands of mine enemies, that onely seeke my death. Alas brother Orson, how suddenly are all our joyes blasted and our mirth turned into mourning. On this wise complained Valentine and Orson, but all this while are they on their way towards Portugall, and shortly after arrived at the Castle of Ferragus. Being there arrived, tyding was brought unto the Lady Bellyfant, that two Christian knightis were come along with them as prisoners: at which netoes she quickly left her Chamber, and came to have a sight of them. When she was come neer unto them, and had well reviewed them, at last she said thus unto them. Childzen (quoth she) of what Countrey be you, and where were you borne? Lady (quoth Valentine) we be of France, and born not farre from Paris; Ferragus perceiving the Lady to speake unto them, sharply rebuked her, saying: Lady, leaue your questioning, for except they renounce their faith, they shall miserably end their days in prison: and herewithall called unto him a Taploz, and committed them into a Dungeon, to be there kept onely with bread and wafer. This misery was not sufficient, but more then that, certain churlish Sarazens standing by, smote these two Childzen with their fists and stabes.

After Ferragus had committed them, he gat him up into his Pallace, and called forth his Sister Clerimond unto him, when she came befoze him, she could not forbeare teares, which made him thus to say unto her; Sister, leaue weeping, for I sweare by Mahomet, you have too long doted upon the Brazen head, as well appeareth in that you make your choice with one of a contrary religion: but change your mind, for it is a shame that you should first take him to Husband that hath bene the overthrow of our Brother the Greene Knight, next a Christian whom

whom our lawes doe abhorre. Forbear (I say therefore) and be ruled by my direction, and I will raise your Fortunes, by matching you unto that puissant King Trompart. Forget, I say, these two Treach-men, for shortly thou shalt see, I will make them shorter by the head. Brother (quoth Clerimond) it behobeth me to obey you, for I plainly see I must let go the thing I cannot have: for, whereas force constraineth, fear hath little power, and necessity often prebenteth truth. These discourses finished, Ferragus departed with his Quēn and other attendants, and entering the great Hall, with very much honor and reverence they received the Lady Clerimond, the Quēn thus saying unto her: Sister, welcome, for I have long desired to have a sight of you. Lady (quoth Clerimond) I gibe you millions of thanks, but know this, that I am right heavy and sad for two Christian Knights that are come hither under color of friendship and love, brought over by my Brother's faire promises, and now to be violently handled, as to be thrown into a Dungeon, and also threatened to death: This sister even this, wounds my soule, and splitteth my very heart in sunder. Alas Sister, pittie me, for one of these Knights should be my Husband, amongst all men living hee is the comliest, balianteft, and hardest Knight that liues upon the face of the earth. Againe (dear Sister) by force of armes hath hee conquered his foe, and wonn my love, wherfore Lady pittie my distressed estate, and let me see that Christian Lady which you have so long kept within this Castle. Sister (said the Quēn) I shall gladly consent to your desire herein, and so bringing them together, the Lady Bellysant said thus unto her: Lady what is your will with mee, speak on, for I would gladly hear any thing you have to say: Then thus, I bring you joyfull tydings, and yet the end of my tale will be as sorrowful as the beginning is joyfull: Know this, I am not ignorant of your estate and dignity: for you are sister to Pepin King of France, and wife unto the Emperoz of Greece, who wrongfully banished you his Countrey. Soon after your exile, you were in your travell delibered of two faire Sons in a Forrest, one of which was taken from you by a Beare, and the other you lost you know not how. All this is truth. Now Lady, your Childzen are both alive, & I can tel you where to find them. At these words Bellysant fell into

into a swoond for joy, Clerimond quickly recovered her again and then the Lady said unto her: Fair Damoysel, how came all these things to thy understanding. Then Clerimond related the whole Story, how Ferragus her brother by subtilty and Treason had put them into a dungeon. Bellyfant hearing her two Children were imprisoned by Ferragus made great lamentation, inso much that the Wife of Ferragus entred the hal, to understand the cause of these mournful clamours. Clerimond told the Queen all from point to point: Well (said the Queen) be appeased, and dissemble the cause from the King, for if he have any knowledge hereof it will make him rather so much the worse then better affected, either to them or you.


C H A P. XXXIII.

How Pacolet the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies.

As these three Ladies were conferring about this matter, into the chamber came Pacolet, the Dwarf, that was new come from his wooden Horse. When Clerimond saw him, she wept bitterly, and said. Alas Pacolet, what injury have I done unto thee, that thou shouldst thus rob me of all my joyes at once, for I am well assured, that thou mightest have given me warning of all these miseries. Lady (quoth Pacolet) be not so highly displeased at me, for I protest, I am ignorant of all that hath betided you: but seeing that he hath begun these bitter bickerings, I swear my Art shall utterly forsake mee, but I will find a remedy for you to abeuge your selfe: and to that purpose I here bowe all my service unto you and Valentine while life doth last. Friend (quoth the Lady Bellyfant) if thou canst but free my two children out of prison, I shall acknowledge me self highly indebted unto thee, and I will recompence thy labours every way. Lady (quoth Pacolet) no more take you care, but comfort your selfe, and ere long you shall well perceibe my crafty work to take such effect by my Art, that you shall have cause to remember mee while you have a day to live.

CHAP. XX. XV.

How by Art Pacolet set free *Valentine* and *Orson* from the prison of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother, and the faire *Clerimond*.

 I chanced upon a day that *Ferragus* made a great feast for all his Nobles; which day they passed in such rebelling and mirth, that the night growing late, they all betook themselves to rest. Being all at rest, Pacolet was still watchfull to gibe the Ladies content, & coming to a great tower, whose gates were brasse, and surely locked, by his enchantment the gates flew open, and hee entered therein: Anon he came unto the dooꝝ of the prison where the Ladies two sons lay bound, and as soon as he touched the dooꝝ, the locks brake, and flew open as befoze. The two Princes lying there in a darke dungeon, and hearing the dooꝝ open, were greatly perplexed, for they looked for nothing but present death; and at last *Valentine* began to wepe, but *Orson* said unto him; Take courage brother, for it becometh us to prepare for death, and sith it is so, be that first entred here to lay hold upon mee, shall dearly pay for his adventure: with that he layd hold of a great iron bar that lay there by; but at last Pacolet spake unto them saying; Lords, feare mee not, for I am come to set you free from forth this dungeon; wherefoze make no noise, but softly followe mee; and befoze the morrow Sun I shall bring you both unto your Mother: *Valentine* at this speech rejoiced greatly, but *Orson* beholding him with an austere look, would not gibe any credit to his words. Pacolet at the fierce look of *Orson* was much afraid, insomuch that hee gave backe, but by the words of *Valentine* hee was much re-comforted, and *Orsons* fure abated.

After this, Pacolet led them into the chamber where as these two sorrowfull Ladies sat in mournfull tears. When he came unto the dooꝝ of the chamber; it was fast locked, but he did easily open it. After they entred in, Pacolet so wrought with his Charms, that all that were thereabouts fall into a heavy and dead sleepe, and knew nothing of their coming. Being in the Chamber toher

as the two heaby Ladies were, the two Sons went to their Mother, but she suddenly fell in a swoond, speaking unto them neber a word: But the Lady Clerimond piteously said thus unto Valentine: Alas (saie Knight) this is the Mother that bore you, who for the love and joy of you, is fallen into this grieuous extasie. Then Valentine embraced her, and took her up in his armes, and Orson also clasped her about the middle, saying unto her: sweet mother, speak unto mee, and then he kissed her tender lip, but all this while she spake neber a word, but at last they all three fell flat upon the earth into a swoond, and there lay panting for breath a long season, while the fair Lady Clerimond stood ober them bewailing this strange accident. At last coming to themselves again, the Mother said unto them, weeping: Alas, my Childzen, for your sakes have I suffered moze pain and anguish then eber poze woman was able to undergo, and you two the only cause of these my dolorous passions, but sith the gods have so ordained that I may once see you and embrace you before my death, all my griefes are banished, and become no burden unto me. But tell me, how have you been preserbed eber since your birth: and in what Country: and with whom have you remained: for it would glad me to hear the event thereof. At last (she having ended her wordes) Valentine began the pittious story of all their miseries, eben to that present houre. Valentine having finished his sad tale, by which the Emperesse Bellyant clearly knew that they were both her naturall Childzen, waeping with many moze tears then before, she would fain againe have fallen into a swoond, but Pacolet prevented her, who was at that instant in the chamber, said unto her Lady leave these laments, and let us think how we may depart from Portugal, and so rid us out of the subjection of King Ferragus. Alas, said Clerimond, my love, remember the oath that you made unto mee, to take me for your wife. Dear Lady (quoth Valentine) what I have promised I will performe: but at this present the love I owe unto this my Mother, toucheth me neere the heart.

These wordes of Valentines being ended, Orson said unto Pacolet, goe open mee the chamber dooze of Ferragus, and with these hands I shall worke his finall downfall and oberthrow. Pacolet answered: come, go along with me, and I shall gladly open

it, to fulfill this your desire: but know this, if you murder him, you shall lose the love of my Brother the Green knight, who may divers and sundry waies do us pleasure. Ladie (quoth Valentine) you say truth, and I agree unto this your wise and discreet motion, for I would not have you guilty of such a crime, as the death of this your brother, for to gain the world.

At this very houre they departed the City, and Pacolet opened the gates before them, and they followed him down to one of the Ports of the Sea, where he had appointed for them a ship ready rigged, and having a faire gulf of wind, they speedily arrived at the Castle of Clerimond, whither being once come, they refreshed themselves with pleasures.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* escaped the Castle of *Ferragus* and sailed with the two Ladies into *Aquitain*.



Valentine being come and safely arrived at this castle of Clerimond, could not so content himselfe therewith, but still grew more and more doubtful of Ferragus, fearing least he should follow them, and put them into fresh dangers. Therefore, to prevent all occasions of further mischief, he gat him down unto one of the Ports, causing the Mariners there present, to victuall their ship afresh, and also to provide good store of Munition, to be in a readinesse upon all occasions. Being thus done, he returned againe unto the Castle without any suspicion: being come, at last he began thus unto his Mother Belysant, and the Lady Clerimond, saying: that he would suddenly depart for Greece towards Constantinople, to see his Father the Emperour who without any just cause had banished his Mother. To this agreed both the Ladies, with Orson and Pacolet.

The next day they tooke shipping and went on their voyage, and at break of day the Taylor according to his accustomed manner went to the tower to visit the prisoners, and to beare them their allowance of bread and wafer. Coming unto the gates, he found them all open, and the prisoners gone, he suddenly returned to

to the King, and said unto him. Dread King, mercy: for this night I have lost the two Christian knights that you had delibered to prison. Hee had no sooner done speaking, but another messenger appeared and said: O King a greater mischance then this is likewise happened this night, for the Christian woman whom you have kept so many years, is this night escaped away, and hath carried along with her your Sister Clerimond. Ferragus understanding these harsh tydings, all enraged began to tear his haire, that hee was as a mad man amongst his Barons, and suddenly causing them to be armed, hee made them to pursue and follow them, so hee betaking himselfe to his club, issued out the foremost.

Hee was a mighty Giant, whoe was in stature about thirteen foot in height. Being out of the towne, hee called his men about him, went forward to follow them that were escaped, letting none passe he met withall, but he demanded tydings of them, yet he could not heare of them: for Pacoler by his Art was too subtle for Ferragus. At last, being tired with pursuite, hee swore that he would besledge the Castle of Clerimond, for hee did think assuredly to finde her there, but all in vain, for they had been there, but they were departed before his coming. Thus enraged, hee swore by Mahomet, that he would either find Clerimond and all her company, or else he would shake all Christendome, and so departed the castle.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How King Ferragus assembled all his men of warre, to take revenge upon Valentine and his sister Clerimond, and how he followed them into Aquitaine.

When Ferragus had long laboured, and could hear no tydings of the Christians and his sister Clerimond, hee was much grieved, & in his fury sent all his men of war on ebery side, presently to assemble themselves to take sea, & follow Valentine, to try if they could find him, & to bring him back again. But when they had spent many days, & effected nothing, they returned ebery man to his home, & rested from their fruitles toyle. Whilst Ferragus and his forces were thus scowzing the flowing seas, Valentine & Orson were entered the city of Aquitaine: being there

there, they dissembled their estate, and as private persons lodged in the house of a Burgesse of the towne: Valentine would gladly have gone into the Palace of the Duke of Savary, but Orson therunto would not agree, for he having a farther reach of pollicy, said thus unto him: Brother, I find by my small experience, that women are variable and unconstant, therefore hearken to my advise, let us onely see and try how the Lady Fezon standeth affected towards me, and herein we shall try her constancy. Brother (quoth Valentine) I shall right willingly agree hereto: then Orson took upon him the habit of a knight Errant, and entered the great hall, taking Pacolet the Dwarf for his Page. When he was come before the Duke, he saluted him with all reverence. The Duke observing well his behaviour, took it to be Orson that thus had demeaned himselfe: but after finding by his speech hee was like to be deceived he said; Great Duke, I am a Knight Errant, and one who would gladly adventure to do you service, in any manner you will imploie me. Knight, quoth the Duke, I accept your proffered service, and will give you salary enough to content you, insomuch that if you will not depart my service before I give leave, I shall give you such riches, as all the stocke you came from could never raise. Thanks (great Duke quoth Orson) for your liberall heart, and I here bow ere I depart, to deserve your love and liberty.

Hereupon the Duke requested him to visite his Court, and in lieu of his good will he allotted him in present pay one hundred and fifty pounds, making him withall a companion for the Court. Orson thus preferred by the Duke behaved himselfe worthy his preferment, and ever so carried himselfe at meat, that every man delighted in his company. Amongst the rest the faire Lady Fezon, that was srown his wife grew wondrous heavy and sad, but shee knew not why, for shee knew not that it was Orson whom she had beheld, and thus passed forth the dinner time. Dinner being done, Orson took his leave for that time, and returned to his lodging, where his mother and the Lady Clerimond had taken up their residence. Orson being come unto the place where the Ladies lay, he related unto them the whole passage between him and the duke: which when they heard, they much rejoiced thereat: But this joy lasted not long, for there came sudden news that Ferragus, had sent

sent messengers unto the Duke of Aquitaine to proclaim open wars against him.

The Duke hearing this unwelcome newes, presently prohibited both men and provision to resist so proud an enemy? Ferragus according to his promise, suddenly arrived before Aquitaine, even in the very same place whereas his brother the green knight had pitched pavillions, when that Orson became his vanquisher. By this means much hurt redounded unto the country and provinces therabout, whereas the Sarazens army lay in a readinesse, thinking by this their long and tedious continuance, to subdue and overrun the whole Countrey before them.

Ferragus still resolving upon this imagination (mark what followed) the worthy Duke of Aquitaine, being of a magnanimous courage, assembled all his men of warre, and being thus put in a readinesse, they suddenly issued out of the Towr, venturing to raise the siege. Amongst the rest Valentine and Orson made their appearance, being also accompanied with little Pacolet, but these three were not known unto any at that time, where we will leave them a little, to heare what followeth.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How the Duke of Aquitaine was taken prisoner in the battell by Ferragus, and how Orson set him free by the helpe of Pacolet.

The Duke of Aquitaine calling to mind the huge army of the Sarazens that lay before the City, valiantly resolved to give them present battell the next morrow: so calling up all his forces, and placing them in readinesse, there happened a bloody battell before the City of Aquitaine, and many a brave leader on both parts, there left their life. The Giant Ferragus himselfe was amongst the thickest, gathering himselfe as neere as hee could unto his Standard-bearer. The chiefe men slaine in this battell, were six valiant Knights, that is to say, Baudomain, Bondry, William, Galeram, Anthony the good Marshall, and Gloriam the hardye, all neere about the Duke of Aquitaine, and they that had the chiefe command throughout his Campe. This happening, the Christians were forced to fall backe, where

whereby the Duke himself was beset with enemies, so that none might come to succour him, yet in the midst of all these dangers, he bare himself most ballant, and still cried, Aquitain, Aquitain, my noble hearts fight on for Aquitain, but in the end, all little abated, Ferragus having once gotten a sight of him, came neer, and at last took him prisoner and led him to his pavillion. Ferragus having thus bestowed the Duke, came up again to the battell which strooke such an amazement into the hearts of the Christians, that they would have forsaken the field, especially because they had lost the Duke their Lord and Master. Valentine and Orson seeing them thus to waver came up with all the speed they could, and cried unto them with a loud voice: Valiant knights and men of Aquitain, shew your selves men, run not away in time of extremity, for if you do, lamentable will be your reproach: bee hardy and couragious once again, and let us try the fortune of the day.

These two knights having thus done speaking, the people began afresh to gather up their scattered forces, and turned their faces once more upon the Sarazens with a double courage. By this time tidings was brought into the City, that the Duke was taken prisoner, at which ill newes the Lady Fezon lamented more then all the rest, saying, with a heaby heart shedding tears, Alas my father, now is your life in hazard, for from the hands of these Sarazens, there is no hope of any mercy. Farewell sweet Father (quoth she) I shall never hereafter see you again, but shall be here left as a dejected Orphant. Alas Orson my love, thy long and tedious staying abroad doth much dissemper me, for if thou wert here present, there would be some hope to gain my Fathers freedom.

Valentine all this while is amongst the thickest, helving forth his way with his sword. Orson on the other side was not idle, for he had taken an oath, that either he would free the Duke from captivity, or leabe his body amongst the rest. Pacolet the magician and dwarf promised Orson aid and assistance at need, and thus all busied, and nigh hand wearied, Orson put spurs to his horse, and ran violently through the battell, and escaped. Orson and Pacolet being past danger, hurled away their own shields, and hanged about their necks the shields of the Sarazens, set forth with the image of

Pahomet in them, and by this subtilty they passed clean through the Campe of the Pagans (for Pacolet could speak their language right well) Now are they come unto the Pabillion of Ferragus, where the Duke lay in bands, thinking to have released him: But Pacolet perceibing the number of his Guard to be too mighty for them, he suddenly cast them all by his d'armes into a deadly sleep. Being thus made fast, came unto the duke, and said unto him, come with us, and presently mount this horse, for we are come to set you free from the power of Ferragus, if ye doubt what I am, I am that knight which in your hall demanded wages of you, and you allotted me liberally. Stand no longer to question me, neither fear the power of all the Pagans here assembled, for I shall surely be your guide through the wicked rout. Knight (quoth the Duke) you are a welcome man to my distressed bands, and therefore for your dangerous enterprize in tooeking my deliberance, I shall gibe you my fair daughter Fezon in marriage.

Indeed (I must confesse) I had giben her not long since to a knight, but he was wild and savage, and he never had the use of his tongue: but by reason of his long absence, I fear he hath wooen some other Ladie, and left my Daughter husbandlesse: but to be short, take her for this thy noble act, and with her, I freely gibe the half of my Dukedome. Thanks (quoth the knight) such a gift is not to be refused: but let that passe, and let us make ready for our escape, that we may return unto your discomfited forces. Having thus said, they all three took their way back again through the camp of the enemy, without disturbance. All this time was Valentine in the army, demanding what was become of his Brother Orson, but when he found no man that could tell him tidings of him, he grew wondrous heaby and sad, fearing least he had been slain in the conflict of the battell.

Thus passed Valentine, from place to place to find out his Brother Orson, and with a resolute mind rushed afresh into the battell, and as a man distract, he said so forcibly about him, that not a Pagan was able to stand against him. Ferragus espying him so balliant, came up close to him; and having gotten him once in chafe, never left him untill he had slain his horse under him.

Valentine having thus lost his Horse, Ferragus seized on him

as his prisoner, causing him to be bound hand and foot, taking an Oath by Mahomet, that he should not escape from death, though there were not a man more to be had throughout the whole Land, but this oath was broken, for as hee was leading his prisoner Valentine fast bound along the field, Orson, Pacolet, and the Duke of Aquitaine, set upon him, Orson crying out, let him not escape us, and therewithall put spurs to his horse, and ranne so fiercely against the Pagan Ferragus, that both he and Valentine his prisoner fell to the earth. The Giant Ferragus quickly re-gained his feet, and left Valentine, who fearing, began to run away. Orson crying him out, brother return again & fear nothing. Whereupon Valentine was new mounted. When the christians saw the D. again at liberty, their courages encreased, their forces doubled, and with joy of heart they cried out aloud, Long live Duke Aquitaine. This sudden noise much amazed the Sarazens, insomuch that Ferragus was glad for to flee and raise his sledge. When the men of Aquitaine heard the retreat, they recovered themselves againe into the City. The battell being thus ended, Valentine and Pacolet returned to their lodgings, but Orson went along with the Duke to his Pallace: whether being come, he called before him all his Nobles and his Daughter Fezon, being all assembled he called Orson unto him demanding of him his name; sir quoth hee I am called Gregory, then said the Duke thus before them all, Lords I give you to understand, that abobe all men living I am most beholding to this knight, both for my life and liberty. And as for you Daughter Fezon, it is my pleasure that abobe all men you accept this knight for your Husband: Daughter you have good cause to love him well, for by him am I made a living father unto you.

The Nobles there assembled, agreed willingly hereunto, affirming that she could do no lesse then submit to her Fathers will, and the rather, considering the dangers that by him had been presented. Orson hearing all this, still concealed himselfe, till he had further assayed the constancy of the Lady Fezon: acquainting his brother Valentine what he purposed to do, as ensueth in this next Chapter.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How Orson tryed the constancy of the Lady Fezon, before he
married her.



Orson having a desire to try the constancy of Fezon, at last replied thus unto the Duke: sir, for the honour you have bought me, I rest ever thankfull for the same, but for your Daughter it were most requisite, that I should see how she stands affected towards me: and likewise fit for her to make choice of such a man as is of equall birth with hers, and therefore if it please you, let her answer for her self. With these words he entered into the chamber of fair Fezon, and sitting down by her, he took her by the hand, and said unto her: Lady your beauty hath so entangled my heart, that without your labour and love, I am as an unfortunate man: Your Father is willing that I shall enjoy you, if you say so also, then may I justly vaunt that I have wonne the fairest Lady living, and will prove a constant knight whilst I have breath. If you consent to this let us embrace each other. Knight (quoth the Lady) you ought to forbear, for all your labour is lost: it is true, I love all knights, yea, and all good men too, in the rule of Honour: but as for him whom I mean to make my husband, him will I never change, nor yet forget. Why, but fair Lady (quoth Orson) that which your Royal Father hath provided for you, ought to please you: sir (said she) it is reason that I obey my Father, but if so be my Father will constrain me to break my Faith, and forsake him that banquished the Green Knight, I will rather leave my Father, then once offer to break my Faith. Lady (quoth Orson) I wonder how you can set your affection on such a man, for he is of a wilde nature and disposition, besides (as your father reporteth) is dumb and cannot speak a word. True (quoth the Lady) yet love learneth me to love him with a faithfull affection, to whom my Faith is already fixed: and therefore stay your suit, for I will never alter nor change my minde from him.

Orson hereat grew wondrous joyful to hear the wise answer of Fezon, and so took his leave of her, and came againe to the Duke, saying:

saying: Great Duke, I am returned from your daughter, for she hath given me an utter deniall, saying that she will never have other husband then he that conquered the Green Knight. Quoth the Duke care not for her deniall, for she shall not rule her own will, but be you a little patient, and this day will I take with her my selfe. Thanks mighty Duke quoth he, I am much beholding unto you, and so left the Court, and came to the lodging of his Brother Valentine, to whom he related the whole manner of his proceedings with the Lady Fezon: Brother (said Valentine) you now know and find her faithfull, but let us go together to the Pallace, for I am assured the Duke will give me good entertainment. Sir (said Orson) do as you please. Valentine clad himselfe in rich apparell, and Orson put on nothing but the Jacket in which he first entred into Aquitaine, and thus accompanied with Pacolet, they went towards the Pallace. And as they came into the great Hall, they found the Duke conferring with his Daughter in the presence of his Nobles, saying thus unto her: Daughter, what moveth you to neglect my command thus, in rejecting the Knight, of whose love I have had sufficient tryall, for he hath saved me alive. Father (quoth the Maiden) I pray you to sollicite me no farther in this matter, seeing you know assuredly that I have given my promise to him that banquished the Green Knight. What greater shame can there be, then to breake my promise which I have made ready? If by you I am constrained, the danger light upon you, only let me be innocent. As they were thus discoursing, the Duke espied Valentine and Orson comming towards him, whom he embraced, and honorably entreated. Orson having saluted the Duke, passed towards the Lady Fezon, who received him with a smiling countenance, and said thus unto him: you are welcome above all others, your long absence hath greatly grieved mee, and had you not come in now as you did, my Father had bestowed me upon another knight. Love (quoth Orson) I have learned to speake since I was with you last, and am the very same man that yesterday courted you in your chamber, all which pleased the Lady exceedingly. So Orson entred into a chamber, and put on rich apparrell, being thus attired, he entred the Hall. The Duke hearing of his comming, embraced him kindly and said: Son, pardon my rash-

ness

ness in that I would have given away thy love to another, for I was fully persuaded that thou wouldst never have returned. Sir (quoth Orson) I forgive you. Then the Duke demanded how, and where they had spent their time since their departure? Orson told him their whole progress, and what dangers they escaped, and withall how they two were the Sons of the Emperour of Constantinople, and Bellysant sister to King Pepin of France, whom they had lately found in Portugal. The Duke hearing that their descent was of Royall blood, was right glad thereof, and said, Knights, you are worthy all honour by reason of your birth, but I am sorry that your Father the Emperour, and your uncle King Pepin are so hardly besieged by the Sarazens, and that unless speedy aid be sent unto them, they will be forced to yield themselves. Valentine giving good eare unto this relation, grew exceeding sad, but Pacolet at last put him somewhat out of his dumps and said: leave off your sorrowing, for ere to morrow night, I shall send you to Constantinople, but (quoth Valentine) it must then be by the devils means? Sir (said Pacolet) mount you upon my wooden Horse, and try the event that will follow after. Valentine answered that will I doe, for I desire nothing so much as the sight of my Father, whom I never saw. Valentine on the morrow prepared for to depart: But before his departure, the Duke married his daughter unto Orson, in the presence of the Lady Bellysant, and the Lady Clerimond, with the consent of the Nobles that were at the wedding, where there was great triumphs, and in this assembly there was a spy who observed all the proceeding, and gave intelligence thereof unto Ferragus. When Ferragus had received these tidings, he vowed by Mahomet to be revenged on them all, but especially on Pacolet for stealing away his Sister Clerimond, whom he so much loved, and had ranked her among the Christians.

CHAP. XL.

How *Ferragus* the Gyant, strengthened his forces by the aid of King *Trompart*, and the Enchanter *Adrimaine*.

FERRAGUS being out of hope to get revenge on the two knights and his Sister *Clerimond*, calling unto him a messenger, and

delibered to him diuers Letters of State, especially one of them was to King Trompart, of whom he desired aide against his enemies, all which if he could speedily accomplish, hee would giue unto him for his wife, his sister Clerimond. At the farewell of his Letter, hee desired him to bring along with him the Enchanter Adrimaine. Here leaue wee the Grant, and return to Valentine, who by this time is taking his leaue for Constantinople. But in the end he said thus unto the Duke and Orson his brother; Lords with you I leaue my lovely Clerimond. Valentine (quoth the D.) take you no thought for her, for I shall haue a fatherly eye ober her, as well as I haue ober my daughter Fezon.

Valentine having taken leaue, at last came to Clerimond, who loth to part with him wept bitterly, wherby he was forced to leaue her, and turning him to his brother, Orson said thus, brother commend me to my father the Emperoz, and to my uncle King Pepin, and tell them ere long I will visite them. Brother (quoth Valentine) I shall remember you, and so departed. Orson still remained in the Pallace, but Valentine had a duty yet moze to doe, namely to take his leaue of his mother; but when she saw him, she claspt him round with her armes, but not able to speake: Valentine perceiving her naturall affection, recomforted her in the best manner he could, but all was in vaine.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the pittifull tale the Empresse made to Valentine her Son before his farewell to Constantinople. And what speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle.



Valentin being overcome with the lamentations of his Mother, at last said thus unto her. O Mother leaue off, bee not so carefull for mee, for if I escape danger, I shall gladly see you here again, in the meane space take care of my faire Clerimond, & let her be assured of my loyalty towards her. Alas my Son, now will it come to light, that I haue been basely abused, & falsly banished my husbands bed and country, but yet do thus much for mee, commend mee to the Emperoz, and also to thy uncle King Pepin, and say unto them

in my behalfe, that I am an innocent Lady. Whereof if there be such a man breathing that will once but open his mouth to the contrary, fight thou for me, and justly maintaine my unspotted chastity, Whither (quoth Valentine) all this and more I shall performe, and ere many months have run their course, I shall cause my Father to receive you againe, and aske you pardon for his rash proceeding. So now hee takes his last farewvell of his dear Mother, with this charge, that so soon as they were arrived, he should send Pacolet, to bring tidings of all that happened.

Now taketh hee his way to the lodging of Pacolet, whither being come, Pacolet made ready his Wooden horse, and mounting Valentine behind him, turned the pin the same way he would take, and suddenly they were mounted into the Aire so swiftly, that ere it was noon, they were in the sight of Constantinople. Valentine was wondrous joyfull, that hee was so neer the place hee so much desired to see, and by the helpe of Pacolet the Enchanter, came that night even to the great hall, where the Emperoz accompanied with King Pepin sate both at supper. Valentine being come into such an unknown presence grew very bashfull: but the Green Knight sitting at the Table with the Emperoz and King Pepin, espied Valentine and knew him, so did King Pepin take knowledge of him likewise, saying thus unto the Emperoz: Great Emperoz, behold here one of your owne blood, a valiant Knight, and your owne naturall Son. The Emperoz, hearing this was much amazed, and rising from the table, made towards him and kissed him. the Green Knight was the first that tooke him in his armes and embraced him, then King Pepin next, and lastly the Emperoz his Father, who was greatly ashamed at his foule fact in banishing his unspotted and guiltlesse wife.

It chanced so likewise, that in this presence was her old servant Blandiman, who well obserued Pacolet ever since hee saw him in Portugall, and at last he went unto him, demanding how it fared with his old Lady and Mistress, the Lady Bellysant. Pacolet satisfied him in all his demands, so that exceeding great joy and gladnesse was heard about the City for the love of Valentine, and people came from all parts to behold the Emperors Son the valiant Knight. Valentine seeing such continuall recourse of all estates gathering

thering about him, he said unto them, Lords, Knights and barons here assembled, who seem well pleased to behold my person, I cannot yield; any other recompence unto you but thanks, & especially unto my uncle King Pepin, who hath ever fostered me even from my cradle, and had it not been for him, I had perished, by reason of a sharp edict published by my Father, who by the false suggestion of a dead traitor, banished my mother from his bed and country: Wherefore to clear her innocency, I (as her naturall Son) offer my body in combat against any false traytor whatsoever,

C H A P. XLII.

How *Valentine* and the *Green Knight* were taken prisoners in the battell of *Constantinople*, by the *Soldan Moradin* and his men.



When the Emperour perceibed his Son to be so much mobed for the dishonour which was done to his Mother the Emperesse, he wept for very griefe of heart, and said thus unto his Son. Alas my Son, I have no doubt of thee to be my Son neither of thy manhood in offering to revenge her wrongs upon the traytor that accused her, but hee is fallen already by the sword of a Merchant, in the presence of thy uncle Pepin, my selfe, and divers others of high state. At his death, he confessed the whole Treason wrought against her, and since that time I have sent divers and sundry Messengers, into all Nations, to heare tidings what is become of her, but all in vain, for I cannot obtain my desired wish: therefore I pray thee if thou canst, tell mee some glad tidings of her. Father (quoth Valentine) I know somewhat, for yesternight, I both saw her and spake with her in Aquitaine, telling him besides, that Pacolet the Enchanter had suddenly brought him hither by Art, rather then good speed. The Emperour hearing such gladsonie news from his Son, caused great trumpets throughout the City of Constantinople. When the Sarazens heard such shouts and rebellings within the City, they were greatly amazed, and every one put himselfe in a readinesse, The Souldan round begirt Constantinople, furnishing up all the Inhabitants most lamentably to behold. At last these tydings came unto the ears of Valentine

time and the green Knight, who arming themselves, came into the City, and said: Lords, you well perceibe the extremity in which we are, be yet couragious and stand to it, and there is hope of recovery: wherefore follow my counsell, issue forth some number of you to forage for some victualls, whilst I accompanied with 2000 men, set upon the Sarazens: they did as he advised them, and within short time they behaved themselves so valiantly, that they gained from the enemy 300 Chariots laden with all sorts of victualls. Having thus seized the victual, they were conducting the same into the City, but the Souldan soze bared at these his losses, got between the City and them, thinking to have defeated them from entrance, but King Pepin espying their policy, and how they had stopped up the passages, presently couched his speare, and ran upon the Souldan so violently that he bare the proud pagan to the earth: then pulling forth his sword, he smote at one Arcillon (a very valiant commander) with such fury that he struk him out of his saddle.



Valentine and the Gr en Knight perceibing the great courage of King Pepin, and what fortune he had in the field at that present, entered freshly into the Battell, and with a resolute courage eben in the presence of the Souldan, he hewed down the cheif standard of the Sarazens. The Standard being oberthrowen, Valentine addressed him against the Souldan himselfe, and with his spear hee so encountred him, that he so scyled him, as hee could scarcely sit his horse. Moroldas one of the cheife commanders was slain, and his Admirall taken prisoner by the Gr en Knight, with other exploits perfozmed on both parts. But marke what followed, these two knights were so triumphant in their uncertain victoꝝ, that they pressed the enemy so far within danger, that when they would return they could not, and so consequently were taken prisoners by the Sarazens, and brought before the Souldan.

The Souldan having gotten them in bands insulted proudly o er them, and with an Oath he vowed to his Mahomet, that they should never escape with life, but gave present Commandement to raise up a Gibbet before the City walles, and presently in the sight of all his enemies to hang them up. Now were Valentine and the Gr en Knight in a great fear: but we will leaue them a little and return to those Christians that had gotten great boot of victuals, yet could not get into the City therewithall, by reason that they were incountred by the Sarazens Army. In which encounter the Christians were so hard beset, that they were doubtful what should be the end of that days bickering. And at last, they espying what desperate case they stood in, with one consent issued forth, men, women, priests, clerks, and all degrees. When the Pagans saw their multitudes, they were forced to retire themselves into their Tents and by that meanes the Christians obtained all their prey of victuals, and safely conveyed it into the City, although with the losse of many a life. The Emperour was exceeding heaby for the losse of his warlike men, especially for his Sonne Valentine and the Gr ene Knight, so heaby and so sadde also was the worthy King Pepin. Pacolet seeing these two P eres take the matter so heabily, recomfozted them againe, saying on this manner: Lords, leaue off pour lamentations, for it shall fare better with Valentine and the Gr ene Knight then you can imagine. Friend (said the

Em-

Emperour) if thy words prove true I will advance thy estate. Sir (said hee) shortly you shall make triall of my love and respect towards you: so hee betook him to his wooden horse, and departed towards the Souldans host, and came thither just at the instant that the Souldan came to judge Valentine and the Greene Knight to death, and how it was prevented, you shall hear in the Chapter following.

CHAP. XLIII.

How Pacolet by enchantment delivered Valentine and the Green Knight out of the bondage of the Soldan, and how Pacolet cozened the Soldan when he had him upon his horse, and in stead of carrying him into Portugall, brought him into Constantinople, where he was hanged.



Al being assembled as aforesaid, the Soldan began thus to speak: Lords, here I present before you, these that most encomber the mighty Gyant Ferragus, and that which most you ought to respect, is, that one of them hath forsaken his Religion, and for that cause, my judgement is, that hee be sent to Ferragus and from him receive punishment fitting his offence. Ray said the other Sarazens, let us never doe so, but let them both here suffer death to morrow morne. Lords (quoth the Soldan) be it so. These resolutions thus agreed upon, the Soldan entred his Pabillion to supper, where being set, Pacolet came and saluted him in the name of Mahomet. Pacolet (quoth the Soldan) thou art welcome, how fareth Ferragus my deere friend? Sir (said Pacolet) right well, and by me sends glad some tidings, if you please to hear them. Right gladly, (said the Soldan) I pray thee begin, then Pacolet drew him aside out of the hearing of his attendants, and said, Sir know this, I am lately come out of Portugall, and sent by the faile wife of Ferragus, whose heart is on fire with the love she beareth to you: long hath she concealed these her affections, but having no power longer to keep close the closet of her heart, she hath committed to me her love, her trust, and what she dares not utter to any save to my selfe. Again, Ferragus is in Aquitain, so that no

opportunitie would be omitted. Therefore come along with me and stay no longer to expostulate, for upon my horse will we suddenly arrive in Portugal, and bring you to the faire Ladies sight. Pacolet thou hast more gladdened my heart, then all worldly treasure can afford: true it is, she is the only woman liking that ever I aimed at, but never knewe I how to effect my wishes. The Souldan caused Pacolet to be highly feasted, so on a morrow they went on towards their journey, but marke what followed: Valentine and the green knight you must conceive were both in the Pabillion, and were right glad that they had gotten a sight of Pacolet, but durst not make any shew thereof: and Pacolet on the other side, shewed himself a flatterer to the Souldan, in eating, drinking, and rebelling at the Souldans table, and in beholding the Prisoners, said thus unto the Souldan, in hearing of all. Sir, how dare you venture your noble person so neer to this Green Knight, and not rather give him his desert, for of all men living he is most dangerous, first, for the wrongs that he committed against his brother Ferragus, breaching him of his Clerimond, and giving her in marriage to a Christian Knight, next he hath renounced his Mahomet: These things considered, it is fit that he should die, were there no more men living. Friend (quoth the Souldan) to morrow morning, they shall both be hanged: then the Souldan commanded the prisoners to be strongly guarded upon pain of death, and so withdrawing him to his chamber, left Valencia and the Green Knight under the conduct of those that most desired their death.

In the dead time of the night came Pacolet unto Valentine and the Green Knight, and first freed them of their bands, and by art so charmed all the Warders (who slept securely) that hee brought them past all danger. Having thus set them at liberty, about the dawning of the day he came to the Souldans tent, crying out so loud to him that he awaked him, and then Pacolet began thus to say unto him: Sir, little appeareth your love to the wife of Ferragus, seeing for her sake you are loth to break one houres sleep: to bereave unto the Souldan replied, thou hast done well to awaken me, for I was even now in a most fearfull dreame, and thus it was: My thought a Crow did beare me swiftly through the aire, and as she was flying away with me, another great bird met me, and struck at:

at me with his bill so hard, that the blood forthwith issued out in a
 buudance: now this dream maketh me much to fear, that Ferragus
 hath some intelligence of my desires, and meane to revenge him-
 selfe upon me. Away sir (quoth Pacolet) with this childish fear,
 will you therefore neglect the love of such a beauteous Lady? By
 Mahomet (quoth the Souldan) thou saiest truth, and calling his
 Chamberlain to make him ready, gave him this charge, Sicken he
 secret, if thy Uncle Bryan aske for me, tell him I am gone a little
 way to dispose with Pacolet. Then Pacolet took the Souldan be-
 hind him upon his wooden horse, and turning the pin, the horse
 rose up into the aire so swiftly, that in a little space they were
 come to Constantinople, even to the Emperors Pallace. The Sol-
 dan perceiuing Pacolets horse to make a stay, said thus unto him:
 Friend, are we at our iourneys end? Yes, and feare nothing, for
 we are now in Portugall, in the Pallace of King Ferragus. By
 Mahomet (said the Souldan) the devil hath borne us thither very
 quickly. Well (said Pacolet) enter you into the great Hall of this
 Pallace, and in the mean space I will haue me to the Chamber of
 the Lady, and presently cause you to be brought unto her bed: both
 quoth the Souldan, for I am even well-near satisfied with joy, and
 shal thinke each minute an hour, till I have my desire.

Now sitteth the Souldan in the Hall, attending the coming
 backe of Pacolet, while he in the mean space maketh toward the
 Chamber wherein the Emperoz lay: being come to the doore, he gave
 a great blow against it, inasmuch, as the Chamberlaine asked
 who it was that thus presumed to disturbe the Emperours rest:
 Friend (quoth Pacolet) feare not, for I am Pacolet, newly come
 from the Souldans host, where I have set at liberty both Valentine
 and the Green Knight, who were condemned to die. Besides, say
 unto the Emperoz, that I have brought along with me the Souldan
 himselfe, who is at this present within this Pallace, and thinketh
 himselfe to be in Portugall: Wherefore, he may now be revenged
 on him at full, for he hath most justly deserved death. The Cham-
 berlain told the Emperoz all these tidings, and King Pepin also;
 so arming themselves, they came into the Hall, where the Souldan
 saie: the Souldan perceiuing himselfe betrayed, cryed out with a
 loud voice: Thou false Pacolet, traitor to my person, I vowe to be

revenge upon thee for thy dissuall practise towards me, and therewithall drew forth his sword, and like a mad man ran up and down the Hall, striking the very stones so fiercely, that he made the fire to fly from those fenceles walls. As he was in this madding fit, the Attendants entred towards him with Lordes. The Souldan slaying them, defending himselfe so fiercely, that he slew the Squire that attended upon R. Pepin: this act of his fired the courage of the King, that he made a blow at him, & felled him to the earth. Being slain, they bound him hand and foot, and in the morning came Valentine and the Green Knight, who finding the Souldan there in bands, was very ioyfull.

The Emperour and the King seeing Valentine, were ioyfull for his deliverance, giving great thanks to Pacolet for his care over his son: and withall said, Pacolet, one strain more of thy Horse must I demand, you shall sir (quoth Pacolet) and if you will get up behind me, I shall instantly transport you into hel. But Lords, let that passe, and return unto the death of the Souldan, for if he escape your hands at this time, a world of miseries will follow: so that very hour they proceeded to Iudgement, and commanded him to be hanged on the greatest Tower of the Pallace, even in the very sight of all his Pagan host.

This don, the Pagans stood as men confounded, and amazed to see him there hanging, and wondered how he came within the City, but at the last, Bryan his uncle told them how he had been deceived by that Traytor Pacolet. After they had long lamented the death of the Souldan, they gathered themselves to Councell, and in his stead chose his uncle Bryan Souldan. After all these things done, Pacolet took his leabe of the Emperour, and returned into Aquitaine, to comfort the Lady Clerimond, as he promised: but before his departure Valentine came unto him, and said; Pacolet, at your coming into Aquitaine salute from me my mother Belysant, and my loving Lady Clerimond, my brother Orson, and the good Duke of Aquitaine, with the rest of the Nobles, and above all the rest deliver this to my mother, by which she shall understand our whole proceedings here, Sir said Pacolet, all this shall I willingly performe, so taking his Horse, he leapt upon him, and hee flew up into the aire as swift as smoke.

The next morning Pacolet was come to his journies end, and finding the Duke of Aquitain, the Emperesse Bellysant, Orson and Clerimond, all in safety, he saluted them all, and delibered them Letters: The Lady Bellysant called her Secretary, to read the Letter, who said, Lady your Sonne Valentine græteeth you well, shewing you that the Emperoz would gladly see you, confessing his rash credit giben to a Traytor, about your banishment, who hath requited it with the losse of his life; wherefore, he promiset, that so soon as he can free his Country from the incursions of the Sarazens to come himselfe in person, and then forthwith bring with him the Green Knight, whom Orson banquished. The Lady hearing these joyfull tydings, suddenly fell into a swoond: but Orson perceibed it, suddenly snatched her up into his armes, and being somewhat come unto her selfe, she said: My child, I am justly overcome with joy, in that I understand I am proved an Innocent of such abhominable crimes as I was falsely accused of: but I long to see the Emperoz, whom if I might but once againe behold, I should not longer desire to live, for I am well enough re-denged, and my accuser hath justly satisfied a most shamefull death for his treachery.

CHAP. XLIII.

How King Trompart came before Aquitain, to succour Ferragus, and brought with him Adrimain the Enchanter, who betrayed Pacolet. And how the King of Inde caused King Tromparts head to be stricke off: and how he would have married with Clerimond, and how Pacolet was revenged on Adrimain, in the shape of a woman. And how Ferragus was slain; and how Orson and the Duke went with an army to Constantinople to succour the Emperor: and how Orson led along with him his Mother. And how all the Pagans were slaine before Constantinople, and how the Emperor received his Son Orson, and his wife Bellysant with joy.



Pacolet being arrived in Aquitain, at the same time that B. Trompart came thither to aid Ferragus against the Christians. At whose coming Ferragus began thus to salute him: Famous B. of your coming I am glad, hoping

hoping by your assistance to get back my sister Clerimond, and to be rebenged on all those that have detayned her. Ferragus (said M. Trompart) doubt nothing, for I have brought with me Adrimaine the Enchanter, whose skill shall confound Pacolet in his own Art. Thanks gentle M. I am much bound to you for your love, and if he can but gibe Pacolet into my hands, I shall reward him liberally. Sir (quoth Adrimaine) put your trust in me, and so I take my leave, and so betook him to his Magick Art. Being provided of all things, amongst the rest, he laden himselfe with victuals and took his way towards Aquitain: comming thither, he craved entrance at the gates to sell his victuals, which was easily granted. After hee had sold all, he went into the Pallace, where hee chanced upon Pacolet, whom Pacolet knew well. Adrimaine (quoth Pacolet) you are welcome, from whence came you and what is your Errand? Then said Adrimaine, you know, that long I serbed King Trompart, yet by fate I am fallen into a great nushance, for one in his Court habing smitten me because I would not teach him the principles of my art, I dzew forth my knife, and killed him. Now fearing death, I am expelled the Court, and for this cause I fled towards you for succor, and will probe unto you a faithfull servant so you be pleased to accept of me. Adrimaine said Pacolet, I am content, let it be so, make thee good there, and be merry. As they were thus in their cups, Adrimaine saw the fair Clerimond passe through the Hall, who presently demanded what Lady it was? Then said Pacolet, it is the sister of Ferragus, who must be married to a right ballant knight. Whilest they were thus in conference, came Orson unto them, and said Gentlemen, I could gladly wish, that out of your Art, you would shew somewhat to delight the assembly.

At whose words, Adrimaine dzew up a Cup adobe a Pillar, in such wise that through the place (seemingly to all the company) ran a Riber, furnished with all sorte of fish little and great. When the beholders saw the water to come so strongly against them, they were afraid of dzrowning Pacolet beholding this feat amongst the rest, began a song, and in that song a Charme, that it seemed to all the beholders, that a great Hart ranne throw that Riber, overturning all things that stood in his way. After this Hart ran hunters with their hounds. This made many of the beholders leape after

ter, thinking to have taken the Hart: but Pacolet by his Art made the Hart suddenly to vanish. This sport (quoth Orson) was very well performed, and so the company breaking up, Pacolet led Adrimain to his Chamber to lie with him, but it proved fatal, for toward midnight, Adrimain so enchanted all within the court, and with them Pacolet, that he had time to worke all that he desired. Afterward he went toward the Horse of Pacolet, and getting him, came into the Chamber of Clerimond, and by Art caused her to rise and make her ready, and setting her on the horse behind him, came unto a window, turned the pin, and suddenly he arrived in the tent of King Trompart. Being come thither, he cryed out aloud, saying, Great King, sleep not, but hast you hither, and you shall see the pleasant Lady Clerimond, whom I have stolen from Aquitaine, and with her Pacolet's horse. Now said the King I well perceibe thy love: is this the Sister of Ferragus? yea said Adrimain, and I have also stolen her away, and also betrayed Pacolet my fellow Magitian, for he shall never be master of his horse again. I but said the King, art thou acquainted with the manner of his horse? O, long since worthy King, and by vertue of the pin how to govern him. Having thus made this known unto King Trompart, he thought to make experience of the horse himself, and taking the Lady Clerimond behind him, would transport her into his own Country, and there marry her.

He being thus determined, he embraced the Lady in his armes (for all this while she was not awaked out of her enchanted sleep) and set her on the horse of wood. All this Adrimain was eye witness of, and said thus unto him: O my Lord, if you faile any jot of the true use of the horse, both your selfe and the Lady are in very great danger. Fear not that quoth Trompart, and so turning the pin he mounted swiftly into the aire, and before next morning he was 200 miles on his way, but not at his journeyes end, for not awaked the Lady Clerimond out of her own enchanted sleep, who seeing her selfe so deluded, fell suddenly into a swoond, this chance stroke to the heart of King Trompart, for he was afraid least she had been dead, and so turning the pin, he stopped the horse in a faire green field by a fountain, then taking the Lady from the horse he laid her on the grasse, and tooke a little water and cast it on
her

her face, and the Lady recovered, being recovered, she made such grievous lamentations, that King Trompart was well-nigh out of his wits: within this place there was a shepherd of whom King Trompart required somewhat to eat, which he gave unto the Lady, who eat thereof and was refreshed: and at last being come again unto her speech, she weeping uttered these words: Unhappy I above all creatures, for I have lost my joy by accursed treason. Alas Valentine my love, cursed be he that hath separated us. Trompart hearing her so clamorous, reproved her roundly, saying: Lady leave off these foolish words of the christian boy, or else I shall separate thy head from thy body: is it not better for thee to be my wife, that am sole Lord of all this jurisdiction, then to have a beggerly start up, that hath neither land nor living. And with these words he would have kissed her, but the Lady disdaining him, bit him with her fist upon the mouth.

This strange and unlookt for disdainfulness, put King Trompart into such an anger, that he in a furious rage caught her up, and set her upon the horse again, and turning the rein the contrary way, presently instead of carrying her into his owne Country, he lighted in Inde, in the midst of a market place, kept there that day, the people seeing such a strange sight, marvelled much thereat. The Lady Clerimond by this time knew the horse to be Pacolet and said: How am I falsely betrayed, and Pacolet robbed of his horse; but my dear Valentine he it is most stricken at my heart, for now shall I never see thee more. Trompart (who thought for all this that he had been in his owne Country) still beating down her piteous laments with bitter words. But marke what followed, tidings was brought unto the King of Inde, of what had happened, who commanded them to be brought before him. But this fell out ill for K. Trompart, for the King of Inde knew him well.

King Trompart being come before the K. of Inde, he had him welcome, for you are he that hath put my brother to death: wherefore I will be revenged on thee, & so caused his head to be stricken off. After the Lady was led into the Kings Pallace, where hee sate in his owne person, and he thus said: Lady I know now of whence you are, by the bright splendor of your face, it hath enthralled my heart, wherefore if so you please to be my wife, I will make you

you Quēen of all this spacious continent. Sir (quoth shee) you speake graciously, but to take any man to Husband, I haue made a solemne vow to refraine during the space of one whole year : wherefore pleseth it you to let my vow be accomplished and that time being run out, then will I willingly consent thereto. Well, said the King, thy answer is reasonable, let it be as thou hast said, performe thy vow, and remain within my Pallace, & he commanded that her attendance should be as great as if shee had ben his Quēen, allowed her a Chamber of state, into which Chamber shee caused to be brought the wooden horse that carried her thither, and being there, she placed it in the secretest place shee could devise, and still desired shee might be freed out of that danger. How leaue we her a while, and return to Pacolet, and look back also to Aquitaine, and see the mourning that is made for the Lady Clerimond.

The night after Adrimain had betrayed Pacolet, great lamentations was made for the fair Clerimond, throughout the City of Aquitaine : Whereover, when Pacolet found Adrimaine absent, he doubted more, and looking round about the chamber wherein the Horse stood, he suddenly missed it, all this so falling out, Pacolet fell into a most grieuous passion, inso much as had not Orson at that instant come in, he would haue destroyed himselfe.

Pacolet being thus rescued by Orson, and beholding the generall sorrow for the beauteous Lady Clerimond, he began thus to comfort them : Lords I will not gibe other, till I am rebenged on that Traytor Adrimain, by whom we are all thus wronged. Wherewithall he departed, and apparelled himself like a gallant maid, and took his way to the host of Ferragus. Being come among the Army, many Pagans prayed her for her lobe, but euermore Pacolet excused himselfe and said, pardon mee I pray you, for I am promised already to the Enchanter Adrimain, and so they let her passe on. At last Pacolet came to the Tent where Adrimain was, at which Adrimaine stood amazed, and was so deeply overcome in lobe, that, that night hee retained him into his Chamber, but Pacolet no whit to leaue of his spitts, made somewhat squamish, and said : My Lord know this. I haue bene desired of many, but I thinke fittest the worthiest to be first serbed : Daughter (quoth Adrimaine) feare nothing, make good here, and be mer.

metty, for I habe a good stomacke to thee, and will use thee well. He to be committed the maiden to one of his servants to be served with all the dainties that could be had.

Pacolet being thus highly feasted in the tent of Adrimain, while Adrimain is in the tent of Ferragus, Pacolet demanded of the servant of Adrimain what was become of King Trompart? The servant said, I think he returned again into his owne Country, and carried along with him the Lady Clerimond upon a horse of wood, that my master had given him: Pacolet hearing this, was vexed at the heart. By this time was Adrimaine come unto this Tent, saying to Pacolet: Daughter is it time to go to rest: see here is the bed wee meane to sleepe in: your will bee done said Pacolet. Then Adrimaine put off his cloathes, and went into the Bed, Pacolet so enchanted him into so strong asleepe, that wake he could not till the morning. As he dealt with Adrimaine, so he did with all round about him, and putting off his womans attire, hee clad himselfe in all the richest cloathes that Adrimaine had, and after with his own sword cut off his head, and bare it away with him. Having thus done, he takes his way towards the Tent of Ferragus, the which he found well guarded, and there by his Art, he also cast them all into a heaby sleepe. This done, hee entred into the tent of Ferragus, where he suddenly made him leape out of bed, and cloath him: and tying him in his girdle, made him run by his side like a Spaniell, till he came even to the very entrance of the gates of Aquitain.

When Pacolet was come to the gates of the Pallace, he found there the Duke himselfe, accompanied with many of his Barons, and espying Pacolet they said unto him: where is Clerimond that thou bringest not her again? He answered, Lords patience a while, I cannot shew you all at once: know this, I am fully reberged on Andrimain, for here I habe brought his head, and here is Ferragus, who by my Art I habe also surprized as you may see. Then said Orson you habe done very well. My Lords, more yet habe I to say, which is, I habe enchanted asleepe the whole host of Ferragus, therefore if ever you meane to have a resistanceless victorie, go now. What say you my Lords (quoth Orson) mee thinkes Pacolet hath well advised us: therefore let us go on, so they slaughtered all that lay

lay before them, and put Ferragus into a most filthy dark and loathsome prison, untill their return.

After this great slaughter was ended, the Duke returned again into Aquitaine, and there commanded to have the Giant Ferragus brought before him, who was by this time awaked out of his enchanted sleep, unto whom the Duke thus said: Ferragus, if thou wilt here forsake thy Mahomet, and receive baptisme, then thou shalt live: which if thou refuse to do, thou shalt surely dye. Anon (said Ferragus) I had rather suffer a thousand deaths: so hee was suddenly beheaded. After his death Orson tooke leaue of the Duke, and went towards Constantinople, to aid his Father the Grecian Emperoz, and his Uncle King Pepin of France, against the unbelieving Sarazens that had strongly besiedged that City, but a little before his departing, the Duke said thus to him: Worthy Knight, sith ye are resolved to depart, I will go along with you, and beare you company. Orson was very ioyfull to hear him say so, and gave him thanks, so taking some small time to set things in readinesse, he committed the keeping of the City to a worthy & baliant knight who brought them on towards their journey. But by the way, the Emperesse Belysant much lamented the hard usage of her Lord, but Orson pittyping her, said: Mother, leaue off your teares, and only ioy in that you have been falsely accused, which now will much increase your honoz: but I feare most our entrance into the City, which as I hear is much troubled with the Sarazens. Nay (said Pacolet) fear not that, for I will worke a device to enter, and my selfe will go before and tell them so. Do so (said Orson) and tell Valentine the hard fortunes of Clerimond: Nay (quoth Pacolet not I) I will be no bearer of such sad tidings.

Now King Pepin and the Emperoz being strongly besiedged, were in great distresse for victuals within the City, and there was no way to be relieued, but by the sword. Then Valentine knowing their great necessity, accompanied with the Green Knight, and a worthy band of Souldiers, issued out of Constantinople, and charged upon 200 Chariots of Victuals of the Pagans, and recovered the same with the death of an those that attended upon them. Having gotten this boot, they made their return towards Constantinople, thinking to recover the City, but they were begirt

round about : on the one side with the Souldan, and on the other side with the King of Araby, and thirdly with a King called Afficion. Amongst these companions fell out a terrible bloody conflict, but Valentine in single fight killed the King of Dramagen, and the Knight Clarian. The Green Knight also behaved himselfe so valiantly, for at one blow he strooke off the shield arme of the King of Morien, and befoze that slew his Brother. But all this baloz little abaile, for in the end they were both taken prisoners and led befoze the Souldan: who having them in his possession, assembled fifteen Pagan Knights to adudge them to death, Valentine being thus in bonds, greatly lamented the woefull state of the Lady Clerimond, taking leave both of his Father, Mother, Brother, and the rest, saying I must now forsake you all, and neber again behold your faces. The Green Knight seeing him so passionate: said, Let us dye in a good cause, and welcome death.

Now was the Souldan set in his chaire of state, to proceed to Judgement: in the mean space, in comes Pacolet in the midst of the throng, not known of any, and came and stood befoze the judgement seat, and kneeling down said: Right deare sir, know I am a Messenger from your Brother Godart the great King of Argier, who to your succour hath brought along with him four mighty Kings, and by me requireth on which part of your Army, they shall be ranked.

Againe, hee prays you, if you have any Christian prisoners to send them him, and he will send them into his Countrey to draine the plough, and here stands a couple of fit instruments for that purpose. The Souldan rejoiced at these tydings, and commanded he should be feasted for that night: mean time, Valentine and the green Knight were glad of Pacolet's company. In the dead time of the night, Pacolet went unto them, and giving to each of them a horse, unbound them, and bad them follow him. Being out of the enemies reach, Pacolet said unto them: Lords be comfortable, for in this land is assembled the Duke of Aquitain, and the Knight Orson, the Noble Gypseye, and the Lady Fezon, I but said Valentine, who cometh not the faire Clerimond: then answered Pacolet, he would have come, but being sea-sick, he was forced to return again to Aquitain: So Valentine for that time questioned no further with him.

Then

Then Pacolet advised them all to go into the City of Constantinople, and on the morrow, issue out thereof with a mighty Army upon the Enemy. In the mean space I will on the other side so bestir my selfe, that the host of the Warlike Duke, shall come up and give a fresh assault. Now the Soldan seeing this, shall imagine it to be his brother, the King of Argier.

Pacolet (said Valentine) thou hast well advised, and so it shall be effected. Thus they departed. Pacolet took his way to the Duke of Aquitain, who was yet on the Sea-shore, telling him that hee had been with the host of the Soldan, and how he had freed Valentine and the Green knight. Then Orson answered, Pacolet, there is yet one thing more to be done, and that is this, that to morrow in the morning, we assaile the host of the Sarazens on the one side, and they of Constantinople on the other side, and so by that means we shall overthrow them quite. For all that comes on your part, shall be thought to come to aid the Sarazens. Then did the Duke draine up his men in order, and so kept themselves that night.

The next morning the Emperour and R. Pepin diligently brought forth their men to the fight, and divided their Host into five Battalies. The first was delivered to Valentin: the second to the green knight: the third to King Pepin: the fourth to Millon Daugler: and the fift to Sampson of Orleance, one that bare in his banner a Beare of silver. At the break of day, the powers issued out of the City, to give an assault upon the enemy: being come into the field: they sounded their Instruments, the noise thereof so affrighted the Sarazens that they ran out of their tents crying an allarm an allarm. This battell was extreame hot for the christians that day, yet the enemy had no cause to boast, R. Pepin behaved himself so bravely, & cryed out to his souldiers, St. Dennis, St. Dennis. When a Sarazen cryed out unto the Soldan to retire for the safeguard of their lives, for this night have we lost our two prisoners, and also there is coming against us a new supply of a great army. Then the Soldan thought that he had been betrayed: but yet he made forwards, and roused up their courages doubly, inso much, that they enforced the christians to fall backe: but little abailed their pride, for there came upon them the Duke of Aquitain with his forces and assaulted them so fiercely, that they put to the sword all that did

come before them, and thus the Christians conquered.

When the battell was ended, and the Christians had recovered up their scattered forces, Valentin and Orson came before the Emperoz, doing unto him dutiful reberence. Father (quoth Valentine) here you may behold my Brother Orson, whom as yet you never knew, when the Emperoz embraced him with tears, and so did the worthy King Pepin also. Faire Son (said the Emperoz) you are welcome, for by you my joyes are doubled. Then assembled together the Emperoz, King Pepin, Valentine and Orson, the Grece knight, Blandiman, and Guidard the Marchant, he that banquished the false Arch-Bishop. All these, with great triumph set out to visit the tent of the noble Empreffe Belysant, and the lady Fezon.

By this time they are come, when the Emperoz saw his wife Belysant, he leapt off his horse, and in tears and sighes not being able to speak, he embraced her: and Valentine and Orson bare them company in their lamentations, so did also many of the rest there assembled. At last words tooke place, and the Emperoz recounted all the hard dealings that had proceeded against the Empreffe, requiring pardon for what was past. My Lord (quoth she) since it hath so pleased the fates to bring me into your sight, I freely forgive all wrong, but I long to see the man, that proved my innocency with his sword. Love (quoth the Emperoz) this is he by whom your honour was preserved (quoth the Lady) Sir, you ought to be regarded for your service to the Empire of Greece and France. For which I make you my Chamberlain, and give you yearly a thousand markes in gold. Lady I thank your bounty, and will attend you during life. Then (said Valentine) Mother I pray tell me some tidings of Clerimond, Fair son, Clerimond hath been stolne from Aquitain, and given to King Trompart that came to the Pagans aid. Valentin hearing this lookt strangely upon Pacolet, thinking that he had deceived him, & would have smitten him: but Pacolet, intreated him to be patient, for an Enchanter hath stollen my horse away, but I am revenged on him, by cutting off his head. Valentin understanding these misfortunes, and that every one was innocent, he grew into bitter passions for his loss.

CHAP. XLV.

How King *Pepin* tooke leave of the Emperor at his departure from *Greece*, and how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnier* fainted, and left the knife in the bed. And accused *Orson* fasly of Treason, and how the knife was found in the Kings bed. And how *Orson* claimed combat against his accusers, when they would have adjudged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond* arrived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end, he slew the Dragon. And how *Valentine* after the conquest of the dragon caused the King of *Antioch* and all his land to be baptized, and of the lawlesse love of the Queen *Rozamond*. And how the King of *Antioch* was put to death for renouncing his Mahometry, by *Brandiff* his wives Father: and how the Emperour of *Greece* and the Greene Knight, were taken prisoners by *Brandiff*.



These wars thus ended, *K. Pepin* took his leabe of the Emperoz & returned into *France*, *Orson* would needs go along with his Uncle *Pepin* and spend the remainder of his days in his service. The King was content, and said to him I will make you high Constable of *France*, mozeover if it so chance that my young son *Charles* should decease befoze me, I will make you King of *France*. I thank your gracious uncle, and you shall find me faithfull, and along with me will I bear the lady *Fezon*. The day of taking leabe came, & each embraced other with kisses and tears. But *Valentin* could not rest, for he had lost his lobe: wherefoze I am resolved to seek my lobe, for whom I endangered my life, and by my sword I won *Her*, *Her* I betwape, and *Her* will I recober again if she be alive: but if I find her not, short and woefull will be my days, and so he called *Pasquet* to him, and said: Wilt thou serbe me, and be my companion in this unknown taske? Sir (quoth he) willingly, and am ready whensoever you shall set forward. Then *Valentin* made all things in a readinesse for his departure, and now hath taken sea; & left his *Croton* and Country, only accompanied with three attendants. Now leabe we him, and speake of King *Pepin*, that by this

this time is seated in Paris, and was honourably receibed : but aboue all, the valiant Orson was highly esteemed, insomuch that he had euen all the command of the kingdom delibered ober unto him ; If ought was to be brought befoze the King, Orson was the man to be sued unto.

This greatnes of Orson fretted Haufray and Henry, (of whom you haue heard befoze) to the heart, insomuch as they plotted a means how to take away his life, saying it was much to their indignity, that Orson should be so preferred befoze them, being sons unto the king: surely saies the one unto the other, his glozy cannot long endure, for his own pride will be his oberthrow. A but said Haufray understand me, we haue 2. Nephewes sons unto our eldest sister, to wit, Florence and Garnier, these are both hardy and fierce, and by them me thinks some plot might bee set on foot : againe they are very fit members to execute any villany, for one is butler unto the King, the other is Usher unto his private Chamber : now either of these may enter into the Kings Chamber, and murder him in his bed, and such a deed being done, it will surely be laid to Orsons charge, for he only hath the guard of his person. If this can bee effected Orson will surely be condemned to death, and the Reialm wholly light into our hands. In this it is necessary to use secrecy.

Upon this resolution they sent for these two Instruments of murder, to acquaint them with the Treason, and being come Haufray said unto them : Sirs, I and my Brother haue laid a plot to doe us good, and raise you to honoz, which thing wee chuse rather to offer it unto you, for that you are allyed unto us, and therefore we respect you befoze others. This it is, you know our Father the King neber lobed us, but hath euer advanced strangers, and lest us slightly regarded: these things considered, my Brother, I, and you two Brothers, descended from our Uncle, determine to put our doting father to death, and so we may share the land into our own government. This thing by us first plotted, were fittest to be executed by one of you, and I thinke you Garnier to be fittest for it, because you being Usher in the Kings Chamber, you may condey your selfe behind some Aris, and when the King is in bed, murder him. This being done, when it shall be known that the King

is slain, the fact will be laid upon Orson, for he only hath the charge of his body, and so we shall quickly get him adjudged to Death: and as for little Charles we shall do well enough to make him away. Uncle (said Garnier) doubt not, but that I shall undertake this enterprize. Shortly after, Garnier on a night when the King was at supper, got a knife and secretly entred into the Kings chamber, and hid himselfe behind the hangings. When the hour of the Kings going to bed came, hee was attended by his guard and Chamberlain, as the manner was: the King being laid, every man departed, save only Orson, who conferred with the King till he fell asleep. Orson seeing the King asleep, without making noise left him, and laid himselfe down upon a Pallat by him.

The dead time of the night was come, wherein Garnier assayed (having the knife ready) this bloody enterprize: but being come to the beds side, ready to lift up his arme to stricke the fatal stroke, he thought the King would awaken, and so in trembling fear laid him down by the bed side, and durst not stir: Anon he would adventure again, but being (as before) possesed with fear he put the knife within the bed, then he returned to the place from whence he came. Orson all this while slept soundly misdoubting nothing, but yet was troubled with a frightfull dream, which was, that one would have robbed his Wife of Honour: also, hee thought, that beside a Ki-ber, he saw two Herons, who fought with a Hawke, but the Hawke defended her selfe so ballantly, as hee had slaine the two Herons, had they not been assisted by a multitude of little birds, and the Herons likewise had slain the Hawke, but that an Eagle rescued him.

At this dreame Orson awaked, and was much astonished thereat, saying: The Gods preserve my Brother Valentine from treason. By this time the day broke, and Orson softly stole out of the chamber fearing to awaken the King. When Garnier saw Orson gone, he also followed soon after, and took his way towards the chamber, where he found the two Brethren, who longed to heare the news. Garnier (quoth they) tell us what is done? Lords said Garnier, I would not doe the like again for all the Gold in France, and yet I have not hurt the King, for still as I was lifting up my hand to strike, feare and horor did so affright me, that I durst no more

adventure. But I haue aduised me of another plot, & haue of purpose left the knife in the kings bed, & this it is, we will accuse Orson of Treason, and tell the king there are four traytors, whereof Orson is the principall. Also, they will make away little Charles, and so wholly possesse the Crowne. To probe this, we will say, that for this purpose Orson hath conueied a knife into the kings bed. If any demand how we knew thereof, we will say, one of us standing at the doore heard all their conference, Garnier (said Haufray) you say well, but if Orson deny it you and your brother shall craue combat against him. Say, that by such adventure you come by the worse, my brother and I shall find men enow to rescue you. Thus they resolued and thus was treason the second time laid for Orson the Innocent. The next day the King being at dinner, attended by Haufray and Henry, who shewed good countenance to Orson: when Garnier saw his time he came before the King, saying: worthy king, your grace hath bestowed on me many kingly labours, wherefore it is my duty to open unto you a treason which lately I chanced to heare, and to the end you may haue a care unto your person, I will betray unto you the practisers thereof.

Garnier prayed to lay hands on Orson first, for he was the principall Treitor, the number in all are foure, Orson was the man should kill you in your bed with a knife: and that your Majesty may the better credit me, this day as they met together, I was in a certaine place, and heard Orson say, the knife which you should be killed with, was hid in your bed: now if it please you, either to goe or send, you shall find my words true. Sir (said Florent, my brother speaketh nothing but truth. The King hearing these words beheld Orson with many strange countenances, and at last said, False and disloyall man, can such a thought enter into thy breast, as to take away my life, whom I haue more respected then my own Children? Liege (quoth Orson) be not lightly carried away to belieue this accusation, for I protest I am clear of any such thought, and shall probe enby the author of all these Treasons. Speak no more (said the King) for if the knife be found in the bed, I will craue no further proofe. So calling to his Lords, he said, Lords I was neuer so suddenly confounded as at this present. Sir (said Myllon Daughler, I know not what to say, but I cannot be-
I be

believe that Orson is guilty of the Treason against your Majesty, yea (but said the king) if we find a knife in the bed, it is an evident sign to move me to believe it, I pray let us go make tryall. So the King went himselfe into the Chamber accompanied with many witnesses, and being there, they found the knife, as Garnier said: alas said the King in whom may I trust, when my own kindman seeketh my life; but I hope he shall suffer a shamefull death. With that a valiant knight named Symon came to Orson, (which loved him well) and said: alas sir, fly and save your life, for the King hath found the knife in his bed, and so the King hath holwed your death. Orson said, I feare nothing. The King entered the Hall where Orson was, guarded with 51 Knights, and so assembling his Peers, he proceeded to Judgement.

Orson being brought before the King, and his Lords, he said unto them: *Quoth* Lords, since my words cannot defend me, I require but the custome of your Country, which is, that when a man shall be accused of murder or treason, he might crave the combat against his enemy.

Now for my part I hold my self innocent, which I will maintain, if by your counsels you grant me that which in right belongeth to me: and further to clear my selfe, loe here is my gage: if I be overcome, do with my body as it pleaseth you. Garnier said, Orson, I think you were better hold your peace, for the thing being already proved, we have no reason to answer you in the field. Ah Traitor there is nothing yet proved, but that a man that feareth damnation, and desireth honour, saith so. Upon these words the twelve Peers of France caused Orson to be removed out of the place, and also the brothers his adversaries, while in the meane space the rest disputed the Question. At last it was adjudged, that Orsons demand was reasonable, and that hee ought to be heard. Then were the Brothers called in againe before the King, then Duke Myllon demanded of Garnier, who were confederats with him in the Kings death. Lords (quoth he) I will not betoaze them for all the wealth in France, Garnier (said the Judge) I give sentence that you and your brother take up Orsons gage, and fight with him, for since you conceale the rest of these murderers, it is to be doubted that ther is malice in the plot. Orson at this sentence

rejoyced, and cast his Globe down unto the two Traytors, saying :
 Lords here is my Globe that I cast down to these two traitors,
 upon this condition, that if my case be foule, or by them conquered,
 I offer my body to your will and pleasure: Kise then said the King,
 for judgement is past : and for your further security, it were good
 we had some hostage : with that Haufray and Henry offered them-
 selves body for body for Garnier and his Brother : and for Orson,
 stood Myllon Daugler, and Duke Sampson, So a months day was
 assigned for the combat.

The time being come that they should fight, Duke Myllon
 Daugler, Sampson, Galeram, and Gervais brought forth Orson,
 for he was wel-beloved: when he was armed and well mounted, he
 rode through the City nobly accompanied, toward the place appoin-
 ted Long had he not been there, but Haufray and Henry entred the
 field with their two Nephews royally armed. Garnier and Florent
 the two Traytors greatly feared Orson, but Haufray and Henry
 full comforted them, promising them aid: being thus in a readines,
 the Bishop of Paris went unto them and gave unto them all three
 an Oath, according to the Law of Armes and then the Bishop de-
 parted away. After came the Heraulds, and the Sergeants of the
 field, to cleare the place. Now Haufray had provided 3000 men
 hard by and given them command, that as soon as they heard him
 blow his horn, they should set forward toward him. This gladded
 the Traytors at the heart, but it little abailded them : for as soon as
 the Trumpets gave signall, Orson couched his Spear, and putting
 his spurs to his horse, ran upon them with such fury, and lent Gar-
 nier such a stroke, that he ran through both shield and Armoz, Flo-
 rent on the other side gave Orson a blow that he thought he had
 stricken against a Tower. False and accursed traytor (quoth Or-
 son) that hast wrongfully accused mee, ere this day passe, I shall
 shew thee where loyalty doth rest, and with these words, he with
 his sword smote Garnier out of his saddle, and withall pulled off
 his Helme, and had cut off his head, if his brother Florent had not
 rescued him.

Again Orson made towards Garnier, and striking off his ear,
 said, Faire Paster I would be loath you should loose by the bar-
 gain. Here began a fresh Combate between these three Champi-
 ons.

ons, Garnier having recovered again his Helme, came upon Orson with all his force, thinking to have left some marke of that encounter, but had not his brother relieved him, hee had soon been slain. Thus Orson had enough to do with these two, for they were of stout courage, and beside they helped much upon rescue from Haufray and Henry, but still Orson followed, and at last so wounded Garnier that hee was faine to forsake his Horse. Being on the ground, he smote at Orsons horse, insomuch that he cut off one of his legs, and felled him to the earth, but Orson being light and strong, leapt from off his back, and being on the ground, he came and tooke Garnier betwixen his armes so strongly, that hee tooke away his shield, and threw him on the earth: but as he would have wounded him in the belly, Florent came upon Orson, and gave such a stroke on his helme, that he made him stagger: Orson bered hereat, smote him so, that hee overthrew his Horse dead to the earth, and after took off his helme. Florent was so ashamed hereat, that hee ran up and downe the field covering his head with his shield, and Orson took pleasure in chasing of him so. Florent (said his brother) fly not, returne, or we shal be vanquished. And herewithal they made a fresh encounter upon Orson, & with their swords laid on so lustily, that the strokes entred his Armoz, and drew blood, Orson feeling himselfe wounded, smote off one of Florents armes: but yet hee gave not over. Orson espying him making a blow at him, made as if he would have stroke at Garnier, but suddenly withdrawing his arme, hit Florent in such wise, that he fell down dead to the earth, and after said unto Garnier: Traitor thou shalt after, except thou confesse the Treason. Not so Orson for I will be rebenged on thee for my brothers death. Haufray and Henry disliked the match, and said one of our Nephews is slaine, and if he overcome the other, he will cause him to confesse the Treason, and thereby bring us in danger. Brother said Haufray, I will tell you what may be done: as soon as we perceibe Garnier to be overcome, before he confesse any thing, we will enter the field, and make as if we came to meet up Orson, and we will cut off our Nephews head, and so the treason shall not be known. Quoth Henry be it so. Now are both the Champions at it in the field. Garnier (said Orson) you see you cannot escape my hands, therefore confesse the Treason, and I will

save your life. Boy (quoth Garnier) thy faire promises are little worth, for seeing that I have lost an eare, I little respect any place of honour, so rather choosing to die balliantly, or conquer thee, I set down my rest that here I will finish my fortunes, either to conquer or be conquered. Agreed (quoth Orson) and sith death is so welcome to thee, defend thy selfe, for this shall be the longest day of thy life: and thus he makes at Garnier, and by strength of armes threw him under him and pulled off his helme. Haufray seeing there was no way but one, cried out, Orson slay him not, for we know he hath wrongfully accused you, so we will doe such Justice upon him as to so foule a fact appertaineth: and Haufray said unto Garnier: nephew confesse your fact else will be a means unto the king for your pardon. Lords said Garnier, I did put the knife into the h. Bed: In speaking these words, Haufray drew out his sword, running him quite through, and after said: Lords, let this Traitor be hanged on the Gallows as he hath well deserved: but cozen Orson, I am glad of your victory, for it prooveth you innocent: and though Garnier were my nephew, yet will I never acknowledge him of my blood. Now was come the Lady Pezon who was glad of Orsons victory, & Pepin also came, saying: nephew you have endured dangerous wounds. Uncle (quoth Orson) the traitors are banquished, and Haufray made Garnier to confesse the Treason, and so killed him. Nephew, beware of that Haufray, for he hath surely a hand in it, but for this time I will hold my peace. The k. and the Barons returned into the City of Paris, and made great joy for the victory. Haufraie and Henry spake well of him, but in their hearts they imagined mischeif, which after came to light, and they had their desert: where we leabe them and return to Valentin who rood from place to place to find out Clerimond.

Valentine having travelled along, at last arrived in the City of Antioch, thinking to find the Lady Clerimond. Pacolet being with him, could speak their language, and tooke up their lodging in a great mans house: but the host of the house was somewhat doubtfull: and when they were in the Chamber, he would hearken insomuch that at last he understood they were Christians, whereupon he went to the King of Antioch, and said: sir, there are foure Christians in my house, that have entred your land without pay-
ing

ing of tribute. The King said, thou hast well done, let them be brought before me, so being sent for, he said thus to Valentine: Christian I let thee understand, that there be two things, one of which you must make choice of, or else suffer death. What is it (quoth Valentine) for I will doe any thing to save my life. The King said, you must either renounce your Christian Faith, or else fight with a dreadfull Dragon, that hath devoured many men: shee is bigger then a Horse, winged like a fowle, feathered like a Griffon, the head of a serpent, a great sting within her mouth, a fierce look, the skin covered with red scales, and she hath the feet of a Lyon, quoth Valentine this is some hideous Monster, yet I will try my fortune against her, if you will grant me but one request, which is, that if I conquer this Dragon, you will then change your Religion, and become Christians. The king bound it with an oath that he would, for there were never any yet returned alive that attempted it, sir (quoth Valentine) let me have a bout or two with this Monster. Then he caused a shield to be made, and thereon fastned a great number of long Pikes of steel a foot long, as sharpe as needles.

This shield being made, Valentine put on Armour, and buckling on his Helme, then girded his sword to his side, took leave of his men, and mounted his Horse, issued out of the City. Being gone every one got up into their Windows to behold the sight. Now they of the City, were faine to provide for the Dragon, either the carcas of a man, or of a beast, which if they failed of, none durst venture out of the City: but having eaten her prey, she would return unto her Den againe without doing any harme. All such malefactors as any way had deserved death, were continually thrown unto this fearful Monster, but if that they had no Malefactors, then they went unto the Sea side, for to take up Christians, if they hapned to come on shore, and they were brought to be devoured of the Dragon.

Now by this time is Valentine within the sight of the Dragon, shee seeing one comming towards her, closed her wings, most fiercely casting out of her mouth smoake like fire. Then she descended off his horse, and left his sharpe Are at his saddle boin, and went toward the serpent thinking to have smitten her, but she lifted up her paw to smite at Valentine, who subtilly watching his



opportunity, lifted up his shield (armed as you have heard with Pikes) and so the Serpent broached her foot upon them, who feeling her selfe hurt, she cryed out most horribly, drawing backe and recopling. Valentine pursued, but when the Serpent saw him approach she rose up on her feet, and thought to have beaten downe Valentine with her fore feet under her, but fearing the shield, shee ran back. The King beholding this, said: See ponder is a most balliant knight, whom we ought to reverence for his hardinesse. Also; the fair Quēen Rozamond fell in love with Valentine, to see him so adventuresous.

Now grew the battell fierce and dangerous betwē Valentine and the Dragon, but still shee fearing the pricking of the shield by which he held her play. In the one hand he bare his shield, and the other his sword, wherewith he gave the serpent a marvellous blow under the eare, but with the blow he brake his sword. Valentine was in great danger when his sword was broken, for the beast grew so angry, that with her paw she rent his Armoz quite through. Valen-

lentine still pursued her, and drew forth a knife and stuck it in her throat, but she little regarded it. Valentin seeing all this do nothing, ran and fetched the Are at his saddle-bow, and returning unto her subtilly waiting his advantage, gave the serpent such a blow with his Are, that hee cut off most part of her tayle, whereat shee roared most hideously. After this she flew at Valentines head, and putting off his helme smot him to the ground, but he quickly getting up, was half amazed at his head uncovered. Pacolet perceiving his Master in distresse, got into the City, and put himself in armes, got another helme, and bare it to his master. Valentine perceiving him sayd, friend, I am well-nigh spent, go thy wayes and commend me to my friends, for if thou stay here thou must dye with me : but for all this Pacolet came to Valentine and delibered the helme, the serpent seeing that came to Pacolet, and taking him by the right leg, puld him down under him, giving him a crush with his paw, & he felt it through his armor, & had slain him, had not Valentine with his Are cut off her nose, and put out one of her eyes : these hurts made the beast mad, and opening her wings, shee flew to the top of a high rock. Then went Valentin to his helme, thinking to have put it on againe, but suddenly the beast came flying down and he was faine to cover his head with his shield, which the dragon spying, returned again to the rock. Then Pacolet put on Valentines helme, and said, sir, I am sore wounded & must of necessity returne to the City to get some releife, for my heart faileth, so they take leave. As soon as the Dragon saw him a great way off, she assailed Valentine, and flying directly at his head thought to have laid hold thereon : but Valentine threw his Are so right, that he cut off one of her wings, whereby she could not fly. The dragon being down, Valentine quickly smote off the other wing, so that the battell was most violent betwene them, insomuch that hee was not able to lift up his arme any longer to wield his are, but leaving all, he got up into a tree to rest his wearied limbs, and the beast not able any more to fly, beheld him with a cruell countenance, casting forth of his mouth nothing but sinking breaths.

Valentine being well refreshed, came down and went towards the dragon that ran fiercely at him, Valentine still put the shield before him, and with his are cut off her left thigh, wherewith she fell

to the earth. Valentine still pursued his strokes, and ran his Axe so farre in her throat that she fell down dead. Valentine having thus overcome the Dragon, the King called unto him, and said; of all knights thou art the most hardiest, for by thy baloe is our City delibered of a feartfull enemy that hath much endamaged us: with these words they entred the City, and so to the Pallace, where a solemne feast was held. Then the King caused Valentins wounds to be carefully healed. The Quene likewise highly honoured him, for she was enamored on him so hoistly that for to gaine his love, she would have wrought the death of the King her husband.

Valentine having well refreshed himself, and healed his wounds within the City of Antioch, he said unto the King, sir you remember your promise that you and your people would receibe baptism if I overcame the dragon: you see she is slain by me only. True qd. the King and looke what I promised I will perforce: and thereupon sent his present Edict throughout his Land, that every one should forsake Mahomet, and be baptized. The Quene sent for Valentine to her chamber, who presently went to her, and said: Lady I am come at your command, and ready to do you service. Ah said the Lady thou art of great hardinesse, wisdom, strength, and all the beautitudes belonging to a famous Warriour, happy is the lady that shall enjoy thy love, & that I were not a woman, or a woman not under subjection, O, I could love thee beyond humane reason, hadst thou but so much liberty as to embrace me, or to grant me love. Lady I thank you, but you have wedded a puissant king, and him onely ought you to love and honour. Knight, tis true, I have been eber constant to him, but since I first beheld thee, all my thoughts are captivated: Valentine seeing the Quene so eager, replied: Lady, if the King should but know or suspect me, I should surely be put to death. Again, he is old, you young, rest your selfe content till I return from my intended journey to the holy Sepulchre, and then if the King be dead I willingly give my selfe unto you. Hereupon she played the part of many women that are weary of their husbands for the love of others. Even so began this Quene to practise, for on a night, as the quene was going to Bed, a cup of wine was brought unto her (as the custome was) where-
in

in she had conbeped popson, and after presented it unto the King : but he habing some doubt thereof, disliked it, saying : Lady, looke what drinke you habe bzewed, either drinke it your self, oz tell me what you habe put into it. The lady being in th's perplexity knew not what to say, but falling on her knées, craved pardon, and said that Valentine procured her to do it. I do beleve thē quoth the K. and pardon thē, so they lay together that night : but thē still requested that Valentine might be put to death. We shall as sure as I live quoth the King. She hearing the king say so, was very sorrowfull, and secretly calling one of her maids : sent to Valentine to tell him her will, and what the king had decreed against him : Valentine hearing of this accusation whereof he was innocent, said : what will not a woman undertake ? Now for the love of the queen must I depart like a Traitor, oz else lay her shame open to the world : well, I will rather depart with dishonour to my selfe, then her : and therewithall calling up his attendants befoze the morning he departed the city, and came to the sea-side, where lay a ship full of passengers ready to put off, in among the rest goes hē and his company, so hoisting sailes they departed. On the morrow, when the King was up, hē caused all his Nobles to be assembled, and said unto them : Lords I am most deceibed in the man whom I trusted, and hē whom in heart I held dearest hath betrayed mē, Valentine I mean, who for to gain the lawlesse love of my Quēen, hath stirred her up to popson me, therfore let us proceed to judge him to some shamefull death.

Amongst the rest, an aged wise Baron said, we habe no reason to proceed against an Offender, without calling him to answer. Again, were he never so great an offender, we ought to hear him. Whereupon Valentine was sent for : but instead of Valentin came his host, who told them Valentine was gone befoze the break of the day from his house, but whither he knew not. The king hearing this, suddenly sent forth men to follow and pursue him, but all in vain, for hē was past their reach on the sea.

Shortly after that the king of Antioch was converted, his wives Father Brandisser a Turke, had so great spleen against the king for altering his religion, that he sent to him for his daughter Rozamond. When the K. heard his unjust demand he gain-said him :

hereupon Brandisser came against him with an 100000 Pagans, and besseged his city: At last within the compasse of four months, by reason he obtained it, took the King prisoner, and suddenly put him to death, and crowned himselfe King of Antioch. This done, he returned into his Realme, but as he was on the Seas, by a Tempest he was forced into the land of Greece into a little City called Cretophe.

Within this city by chance was the Emperoz of Græce newly arrived then, and he and the Green Knight with some other company, rid forth to sport themselves (not knowing of the Pagans being there, fell into the hands of Brandissers souldiers, and having gotten them, hastened towards the gates of the city, thinking to have seized the whole city, but they found it manfully defended.

The men of Cretophe were very sorrowfull for the losse of the Emperoz and the Green Knight. At last they determined to send letters unto Belysant of what hapned, and to demand ayd against these Pagans. The Lady receibing these letters was wondrous sad, and sending for their Captains and men of war, made preparation for a speedy rebenge. Also she sent for her son Orson, and craved ayd of her brother King Pepin. Being thus in a readinesse, they were sent to the succoz of the Emperoz: But Brandisser had scouts abroad to giue him notice of all that happened, and fearing the forces of the Græks, and their prisoners losse, they stole to the Sea side, so taking ship, they in short space arrived at Lize in which place they toke a Castle, wherein was kept his two daughters, Rozamond and Galize, who for her beauty had been demanded of fourteen Kings, Brandisser had yet no meaning to marry her, wherefore he caused her to be kept within this Castle for it was the strongest in the land: For it had a bidge made by such cunning art that but one could passe at a time: at the end of this bidge, two fierce Lyons stood to keepe the entry into this Castle. The Lady Galize was kept in a dungeon, under which was a Cave, wherein the Emperoz and the Green Knight, with other christians which had been there along time was put. Where leaue we them, and we shall shew you some-what of the faire Lady Clerimond, which still remained in Inde.

CHAP. XLVI.

How *Clerimond* after the yeare was past, feigned her selfe mad because she would not wed the King of *Inde*. And of *Lucar* that would revenge the death of his Father King *Trompart* upon the King of *Inde*. And how King *Lucar* in the City of *Esclardy*, wedded *Rozamond* the faire daughter of *Brandiffer*. And how *Valentine* departed from *Esclardy*, to breath out defiance: and of the answer hee brought from the Indian King. And how *Rozamond* found a way to be taken and led u into the Indian King, and how King *Lucar* caused *Brandiffer* to stay with him, and sent *Valentine* into *Angory* against King *Pepin*: and how King *Pepin* took the city of *Angory*.



Thou habe heard already of the death of *K. Trompart*, who stole away the lady *Clerimond* upon *Pacolets* horse: also, how she got pardon for one whole year before she would marry. Now is the time expired & all this while appeareth no succor for her reliefe, which she so long hath expected. Therefore (poor *Laque*) now is she put unto her shifts, & to save her maiden head, she feigned her self very sick. This newes came to the Kings eare, that the fair *Clerimond* was extream sick, at which he grew very sad, & came to visit her: at last, he would have put his hand upon her head to have held it, but she refusing took his arme & lift up her head her self, making signs that she would bite him, at which action he wondered, and grew much astonished thereat.

After this, shee rowld her eyes up and downe, and made grievous faces, in such wise that the King got him out of the chamber, fearing least shee would prove mad. In this manner shee abode a long time, and she did act the matter so well that within fifteen days she seemed more like a beast then a woman: she made all her attendants forsake her, for if she caught them, she would leave some marke behind her, so they left her alone giving her meate at the window, for none would come neare her. One while she put her smocke uppermost, anon all bedaubed her face with soot, and in this estate the King came and beheld her, lamenting her distemper, and

said unto her : Lady, now is the time come that I should have had you to wife, therefore be comforted, and be not thus impatient.

The Lady understanding him well, made shew as if she would beare him, but then she fell into a stronger fit of madness, one while she would run against the chimney, another while fall into a great laughter, then sit downe and make faces, and all to presterbe her chastity. Many ways was tried for her recovery, yet none prebated : so leaue we her in her chamber, and return to Valentine, who with an ardent desire is robed abroad, accompanied with Pacolet, to find out the lady Clerimond. Long have they travelled to find out the Lady Clerimond. And now are they arrived in Esclardy, which was the Kingdom of Trompart, who carried away the lady on Pacolet's horse : Being in the city they asked for K. Trompart, so they told him he was slain by the King of Inde, and that now at this present, Lucar his son would revenge his death upon the king of Inde, and to that end he hath newly mustred up his powers, and waged many royall Kings to undertake this war. Then spake Pacolet, who wel understood the language, saying: of what account is this King Lucar ? for the Host where he lay told him, that he should shortly marry with the Daughter of Brandisser that was late wife to the King of Antioch, who was slain by Brandisser for that he forsook his Religion.

At this tale Valentine was much abashed, and wondred at this sudden alteration, but at last he said : Know ye what is become of the Lady that King Trompart did bring with him? Of her we hear no tydings (quoth the Host) tell me then where is King Lucar at this present, I would faine serbe under him for wages, for my maney is faine short, and I have a great desire to follow the wars? Harry, said the Host, King Lucar is in Esclardy, and there you shall find him accompanied with a huge host, and attendeth Brandisser to receive his daughter in wedlocke. Valentine knowing all this, he hoped to hear of Clerimond, and so he departed, and came to Esclardy, to serbe King Lucar.

Lucar being in the City of Esclardy thither came Brandisser with his daughter. At sight of whom King Lucar was joyfull, but the Lady was sad, for of all other she could never affect him. The Lady was led into the Hall, and there married unto King Lucar.

Valen-

Valentine was abroad, and entring a wood, he heard the crying voice of a woman, whom a Sarazen would have rabisht: Valentine still heard the cry, and said unto Pacolet: Hide faster, for this cry is more and more in mine ear, and we shall do a charitable deed, in releebing the oppressed, sir said Pacolet, meddle not in this matter, for you know not in what danger you may be drawn into.

Pacolet thou speakest foolishly, for he is not worthy the name of a knight, that will not aid in time of necessity: so hee rode up and down the wood, till at last hee lighted on the Sarazin that had gotten a Lady under him. Then Valentine said, my friend, forsake your Lady, or else betake you to your armes, and combate with me, for you may well perceibe shee loveth you not. By Mahomet (quoth the Pagan) I accept of this thy challenge, and make thee know that in an ebill hour canst thou hither. These wordes past, he left the Lady, and mounted his horse, and then took his shield and speare, and being prepared, they set out one at the other so fiercely, that Valentine ran his spear quite through the body of the Pagan, inso much as he fell down dead. Then went Valentine to the mayden, saying Damosell, now is your enemy laid in the dust, but I pray shew me the cause why this man brought you into this wood: sir, I will tell nothing save the truth. So it was, that yesternight late he came into my fathers house to lodge, and there attempting the use of my body, but could not, he departed from me, and went into the chamber of my father, and there slew him. Afterward he thought he should surely have got his will on me, in this manner as you see, from which by your manhood I am freed, & mine honor saved. Do with me what pleaseth you, for your body hath ransomed mine, and besides, as you have won me I yeeld me to your pleasure.

Damosell by me thou shalt receive no longer return unto your house, and keep well your chastity. So Valentine left the Maiden, and took his way towards Escardy. This slain Pagan had certaine Attendants which were gon to seek him, and as soon as they found him dead, they told this misfortune to the King, saying our Master and your Marshall lies slain in the wood. The king was hereat right beaby, & presently sent out a search to see if they could find the murtherer. At last Valentine and his company were taken,

ken, bound and beaten, by the Kings commandement. Now in this Castle was Rozamond, who knew Valentine, and was very sorrowfull for him, and anon she went unto the King, and said: Alas sir, do this knight no harme, for I know hee is the balliantest knight breathing. He is called Valentine of France, that slew the mighty Dragon before the City of Antioch, make much of him, and retaine him into your service, for his fellow liues not in the world. Lady (said the King) diuers times haue I heard much talke of his prowesse, and I haue much desired to haue a sight of him. Then he called Valentine unto him, and said, Knight feare not death, but know that aboue all men I love and hold you deare, you, and all yours I receiue into my pay, marry one thing yet remaineth, which you must do for mee, which is, that you go into Inde, and desire the King thereof in my name, telling him that I am ready prepared to avenge the death of my Father, whom he hath shamefully put to death, except hee come presently before mee with a cord about his necke, ready to receiue such sentence, as by mee and my Barons shall be imposed upon him. If he deny it, tell him, I will shortly bisme him & his land with war and not leaue one town nor village unransacked, nor spare the life of any. Sir (said Valentine) all this shall I gladly do, although I do know it to be a dangerous aduenture.

The Queene Rozamond seeing Valentine ready to depart, entred into the Chamber and by one of her damosels sent for him: when he came to her he saluted her with great reuerence, and she said to him: knight you are welcome, for I had a great desire to see you. So had I Lady (quoth Valentine) as great a desire to see you: for since I saw you I understand your Husband is dead, and that you are newly married againe. Lady you know, that for the love of you within Antioch I sustained much danger of life. It is true (said the Lady) and I acknowledge my selfe guilty, and it grew onely out of love to you. But now hath my father bestowed me to R. Lucar, who is rich aboue measure, yet can I not fancy him: he is a perfidious Traitor, and since you entred this Pallace, he growes so zealous of you, that hee sends you into Inde, trusting you shall neber return: for neber yet any came backe againe alibe: but I will circumbent him, and set you free from danger. Therefore know

know this, that not long agoe the king of Inde requested me for his wife, and the truth is, I loved him better then this traitor, but my father crossed me in it: now this king of Inde in token of love sent me a ring, which hitherto I have kept, and not shewed to any save your selfe, but seeing I perceibe the malice of Lucar towards you, I will give you that which shall defend you from danger, and make you returne a victorious knight, and though I am assured you have no need of my love, in that you have promised it to another Lady, yet I cannot forget my heart, which for your love lies enthralled. Wherefore when you come before the K. of Inde this shall you doe.

After reberence made, and salutations from K. Lucar, next gætt him from me, as my love, and secret friend, and tell him, that though my father have given me unto King Lucar, yet his love cannot once slip out of my breast, but still hath assured and full hope one day to meet with him againe, when as we may enjoy our wished pleasures: tell him also that when King Lucar bringeth his Host, I wil come with him, and then if there be any baloe in him, he may carry me away whether he will. Now to the end hee shall not find your words to be in vain, beare him this ring. Lady (quoth Valentine) for your care, love and good will towards me. I humbly thank you, and have no doubt but that I shal deliver your message so effectually to the King of Inde, that you shall shortly receive answer thereof. So taking his leave he went to K. Lucar who allowed him 10 Harriners to conduct him over an arme of the Sea that lieth betwixen Esclardy and Inde, so that having a prosperous wind the next morning they arrived at a Port two miles from the Pallace of the K. of Inde. When Valentin being arrived, he drew forth his horse out of the ship, and backed him, and said unto the Harriners abide here till my returne, for it shall not be long ere I be dispatched. One of the Harriners said unto the rest, if thou return the Debill must bring thee, for of fifty messengers not one returned againe. Valentine over-heard this muttering speech, but made no answer, so he took his way to the City. And when he was nere the Pallace, he alighted off his Horse and went to the King, who was in his Hall richly adorned, accompanied with three kings. As he came up the Hall, the King saluted him with a wrinkled brow, and thought he was a Messenger from K. Lucar, and therefore said

aloud unto him, art thou not a seruant of A. Lucar: sir (said Valentine) I am, and bring you such tydings as will fret your heart: but on the other side, I bring such gladsome news, that your very heart will leape to heare it, from the fair Rozamond. Messenger, know this, that in despite of A. Lucar thou shouldst haue suffered death: but for the love & reuerence that I owe unto that Lady, thou shalt receiue no injury: if so it be that thou canst shew me some token from her: Yes, said Valentine, that shall I shew you, and deliver my message with such applause, that I will not sturbe from the truth thereof. That I belong to king Lucar, you know: who by me sendeth these words, that for the death of his father you must come and yeld to his mercy, with a rope about your necke, as a man guilty of so foule a deed, to receiue sentence of death according to your desert: if you refuse it (as a Messenger) I breathe defiance against you, and tell you, that he will shortly come and lay wast your Land, and ransacke your Dominions.

Messenger, I understand thee, and set light by these his bold threats: and for answer to this matter thou shalt haue Letters, wherein shall be explained how little we regard his menaces, and also how ready I am to receiue his forces that shall come to whip my land. There leaue thou these proud brags, and return to that thou hast to say, concerning the fair Lady Rozamond, for I most of all desire to heare from her: sir, (said Valentine) on her behalfe I salute you as her love, & she sendeth you word that she is against her will married to king Lucar whom she neuer loved. Again the poore lady is so burthened with love towards you, that if she might haue her will, you should soon perceiue, that none should inioy her but you if you bee so content.

How to come yet somewhat nearer, shee told mee, that shee will come hither in the company of the king her husband, when he taketh up armes to invade you, and then you may find other means to accomplish your desire eben as you would. My Mahomet saies the Indian king this pleaseth me exceedingly. Sir (said Valentine) whether these come from a true heart or no I cannot say, but for token that all is true that I haue said, receiue here the king which you gaue unto her, & though women prove variable, yet methinks she speaketh unto you from her inward brest. Friend (quoth he) this

is the same ring indeed, and my heart is overcome with joy, go the ways in, and take thy repast, while in the mean time I get the letters ready thou shalt take with thee to answer his defiance.

Valentine went in as the K. commanded, and was highly feasted, and he still demanded after Clerimond, but could not hear of her, By this time came the King and delibered unto him the Letters, and Valentin taking his leave of him, knew not that his love was in this Court, who abode many evil days for the love of him, and still desired to hear some news of him. In the end he shall find her but he must suffer many tribulations, and hard achievements, as you shall afterwards hear more at large.

Valentine made great hast to be freed out of Inde, and taking horse, he came to the haven where the Mariners staid: at his coming, the Mariners were amazed, and thought that he had not done his message, masters (quoth Valentine) fear nothing, for I have accomplished my message, and I am safely returned. Then the mariners said, we much marvell thereat.

At these words he took ship, and on the morrow they were in Esclardy, Valentine made no stay, but as soon as he was descended his horse, he went to the palace of the King, finding him there accompanied with K. Brandisser and fourteen other kings that were come to the succour of K. Lucar against the Indian K. Of the return of Valentine they wondered, for the king sent him of purpose never to return, wherefore he made Valentine to come before them all, to tell what tidings of his message. Valentine began thus to say, he regards not all your threats a straw. He is fierce and proud, and says, if you have a mind to come to him, he hath a greater desire to receive you, then you have to come, and that you may know I deliver nothing save the truth, here is a letter sealed with his own hand, in which you shall understand his mind more at large. This letter being broke open, they found Valentines words to be true. King Brandisser understanding his answer, swore by all the gods that he would never return home again, but with victory or loss of life.

The next morrow they betook them to the seas with an host of 200000 Sarazens. So the King carried Rozamond along with him, and they were quickly there. Being landed, they pitched their

tents in a pleasant field before the city, whilst they of the city made fast the Gates. The King himself got up into a high Tower to behold their order, so by the other side he might espy their rich Pabillions, gallantly furnished with armes and streamers: then the King called unto him certaine Herald's of arms to know by those armes whose tents they were. The first (quoth he) is Brandiffers, the second is Lucars, and the third is Rozamonds with her ladies: When the king understood that Rozamond was there, his heart leaped for joy, and said, it is no time to sleep now, he that will have the love of a faire Lady, must venture life and goods, or else he is not worthy of her that will take no paines. Hereupon resolving, he presently put his men in battell array, and suddenly issued out of the city upon his enemies, so that they were not in a readines, for they little thought the Indian had been so fierce, but love made him do it.

When the king saw Brandiffer ordering his men in battell array, he left his companies, with much diligence rode toward the pabillion of the Ladies: Now when Rozamond beheld it was he, she gave all the rest of the company the slip, and ran violently into his armes, who joyfully received her. The Indian perceiving her good will, got her up behind him, and putting spurs to his horse, she said, my love is fixed only on you, and for your love have I long mourned, for I never hated man so much as I did B. Lucar, but now I pray thee let me bid him farewell, and I will keep myself onely to thee; as long as I live Lady (quoth the Indian) doubt not for I will not faile you, and here I bow ere three dayes passe, you shall be Queen of India, and Mistres of all my lands. These words passed as he was riding away with the Lady Rozamond. At last the guard of the maydens came out of the Pabillion, and ran to the king, saying, My Lord, there is evill tidings, for this day you have lost your faire Lady Rozamond, for the king of Inde your utter enemy hath stoln her hence, and is ridden away with her, wherefore quickly send your men of War, and follow him, that they may save the honour of your Queen. Hold your peace (said Lucar) and talk no more, for he that hath an evill wife, it is well if he can be so rid of her, although he had a heavy heart. After this, he went to B. Brandiffer, and said, Sir, I have small joy of your daughter, who hath

bath left me, to run away with a stranger, and one which is mine enemy, leading me in repproach and shame. Fair son (said Brander) be not discontent at me, for to day I will be rebenged on him that carried her. So putting spurs to his horse to ride after him, gathered a great company of men. Amongst the rest Valentine was one, willing to shew his fidelity, said unto Pacolet, now shew me by thy art somewhat. Then Pacolet raised such a Charm, which so astonished the Indians eye sight, that (it seemed to him) there was nothing before his horse, but woods, bushes, and great rivers. At this he was so amazed, that he made the Lady alight, when the Queen was on the ground, she thought she should have had means to save her self with the king, but Valentine was so near her, that he said unto her, Lady abide, for you must go with me, for that you have a long time promised me your love. Ah Valentine, I owe you but little Love, for once I made love unto you, and you refused me; wherefore I was forced to seek another: but seeing I am crossed thus, I yield my self as your Vassall, so you will make my peace with Lucar.

Lady (said Valentine) I will do my endeavour, so he led her to king Lucar, and said unto him: Sir here is the Lady Rozamond your wife, whom the Indian Traytor had led away against her will, for which she was right sorrowfull: Sir (quoth the Lady) he telleth you true, for eben as the battell was begun, I saw one come to me, thinking it had been one of your Barons that had come to succour me, and without further inquiry mounted on his Horse; being on Horseback, I perceived then that I was betrayed, so I struggled and puld him by the hair, and scratched him by the face, and forcing him to let me go, I have by the help of this good knight escaped. Lady (said Lucar) you have well done, and at this present we have no leisure to inquire further hereof, so he left the Lady and returned to the battell. They of Inde returned into the City, who had lost divers balliant Leaders, but none so fretted the Indian at the heart, as did the losse of Rozamond. Alas Lady (said he) I have failed thee in thy greatest extremitie, but I was surely enchanted, and on the sudden me thought I saw woods, fields and rivers, for she was no sooner down upon the ground, but all was plain & eben way before me. Valentine had great praise for getting again

the Lady, and she shewed him a fair countenance, in that he had succoured her: but it was all feigned, for she hated him to death, and putting up this mischance, she watched her time, and in the end accomplished her desire, and brought her will to execution.

It is a common saying, women seldom want deceit as here it appeareth in Rozamond: for some four days after, she rode forth of her tent pretending to take the aire, but took her way toward the City of Inde and had given him intelligence of her intent, willing him, that when he saw her out of danger, suddenly to come and seize her as his prisoner, and so carry her away. The king did according to her direction: so suddenly issuing out of a Postern, he came and took her horse by the head and carried her into the city.

Hereupon began a cry throughout the host of King Lucar, that Rozamond was surprised, and she was past recovery. This maddened Lucar at the heart, and he gave out, that whosoever could recover her out of his hands, should be made a great Seneschel: sir (said Pacolet if please you to attribute this dignity, I will so work, that we will fetch her backe: No, said Valentin, let her go, once I regained her, thinking that she would have been constant unto her husband, but all was in vain. The same day that the King had her, he lay with her and begat a son called Rabestre, who after ward had the possession of Hierusalem. Lucar was right sorrowfull for the losse of his wife, but Brandisser his father comforted him, saying, Son take courage, and let us now be rebenged before we depart: but it fell out otherwise, for that day came a messenger unto him: who brought him contrary tidings, which was that King Pepin of France, and the Emperoz of Greece was entred his land, burning and spoiling many places, and were now upon the siege of Angory, in which City his Lady now lay in child-bed: therefore you must presently take course to restrain the fury of the enemy, or else endure such torack as were lamentable to behold.

Brandisser hereat amazed, went unto his son Lucar and said: son here is evil tidings befallen, the French are entred my land, wasting and destroying all things, therefore I must leave you, to looke unto mine own: but let me tell you what you shall do: send some knight unto the Indian, to demand your wife upon this condition, that you shall first forget the death of your Father, & that you will

raise

raise your siege and be gone. Wherefore he sent Valentine unto the King of Inde to declare this message. He being come before him, said : Great King, I am come from King Lucar, who saies : that if you will restore his wife backe again, he will forget his Fathers death, and will raise up his siege and be gone. To whom the Indian thus replied, if hee will have a wife, hee must go seek another, for hee shall never again enjoy her : Valentine having thus received his answer, hee departed and came to King Lucar, telling him all that the Indian had said, which grieved him to the very heart.

Lucar having by this means caused Brandisser to stay with him, sent Valentine and Murgalant to raise the siege which King Pepin had laid against Angory. And as they were under saile, Valentine espying a glittering Tower, asked what it might be : Then the Mariners described the manner and fashion of it to him. So as they are come within the sight of King Pepins Tents, and Murgalant having blessed the Christians forces, found the number to be great : then said Valentine, let us secretly send to the City, to acquaint them with your coming, that to morrow morning they may issue out at that side, and we will backe them on this side, that none may escape our hands. Pacolet standing by, said, Let mee be the Messenger, for I can speake their language. Quoth Murgalant, goe thy way : so Pacolet departed, but (he said to himselfe) by to morrow night, you will sing another song. Pacolet being come to the very gates of the City of Angory, the warders thought him to be some spy, wherefore they demanded of him saying, whither goes this fellow : he looks as if he were some spy : This true (quoth Pacolet) but I come not for your hurt, therefore bring me into the house of King Pepin, that I may speak with my Lord Orson, for I have a matter of great import to acquaint him withall. So they brought him into the presence of Orson, who espying him, was right ioyous, and said : How fares my brother Valentine? then Pacolet told him of all his adventures that hee had passed since they saw one another, and also how valiantly and wonderfully he had overcome the Serpent and how hee could hear no tidings of Cleimond, and told him that they were now come to beare armes against them, accompanied with 100000 pagans under the conduct of Valentine and Murgalant, and to chase you out of these confines,

by the command of R. Lucar and R. Brandiffer, but if you will be ruled by me, I will send the pagans short home. Quoth Orson as thou hast said, and win immortall praise to thy posterity: Sir said Pacolet I am bound in all duty to your Brother Valentine, but the service that I shall now undertake, will highly please you: First, stand you still upon your Guard, and in the night put all your men in readines: and for that Valentine shall not be suspected to be in the plot, hee shall continue in his Tent, whilst I cast a strong sleepe on all the Sarazens, and then may you come upon them and slay every man. This good said Orson, so Orson led him to King Pepin to make him acquainted with the enterprize, and Pacolet was royally entertained for that time. Now Pacolet to the end there should grow no mistrust, gave certain signes to Murgalant. Being in the City he found out the Admirall Bruhans, and saluted him with great reverence, & delibered unto him the message which hee had brought from Murgalant, which was, that of Brandiffers part were newly arrived 100000 and Murgalant sends you word by me, that to morrow betimes you have your men in a readinesse, to assaile the Christians on the one side of the City, and Murgalant will assaile them on the other, thereby to hem them up, that not a man of them escape. The Admirall was glad to heare these tydings, but he knew not how this should come to passe. Pacolet took his leaue of him, and returned backe again unto Murgalant with salutations from the Admirall: so Murgalant gave him great thanks for his message, and Pacolet departed secretly to speake with Valentine, when he was come, he said thus unto him, your Brother Orson and your uncle King Pepin greete you well by mee, to whom I have related the whole manner of your coming, because I would have them well and ready prepared: But Pacolet would not let him know the plot he had in hand, for hee durst not reveal any Treason unto Valentine. The night is come wherein this bloody stratagem is to be acted, so Valentine commanded the watch to be strongly set, and would be in the watch himselfe, but Pacolet found a way to prevent him, and caused him to abide in the tent: In the dead time of the night, Pacolet went amongst the Pagans, and cast such a charme, that they fell asleepe. This opportunity was not let slip by R. Pepin, for he with his army

my entred the Host with 60000 fighting men, and set fire amongst the tents and Pabillions and killed all that resisted. At last they came to the tent of Murgalan, who lay asleepe in his bed, and hee being suddenly affrighted, skipped out, and one receibed his body on a Dart, and so he fell down dead.

The assault being given on the Sarazens, Pacolet said unto Valentine, seeke to save your selfe for the Christians have killed the toatch, and entred the Host, Pacolet (said Valentine) thou hast made mee breake my promise with Brandisser, for which I shall surely dye. Fear not, quoth Pacolet, for he shall do thee no harme. The morrow after, Bruhans issued out of Angory, and set upon Pepins host, who knew not what had happened. The battell grew both fierce and long: At last, the Admirall couched his spear, and running against a knight of Bay, stroke him starke dead, and after that, with his sword he slew Gyrald of Paris: then came he against Robert of Normandy, and lopt off his leg. At last king Pepin met with him, and couching his Speare, hee ran him quite through: the Pagans seeing their Admirall dead, retired into the City, the Christians followed them, but they defended themselves so balliantly with shot, that the Christians were faine to forsake the wals: but by some other stratagemes they tooke the City, putting all the Sarazens to the sword. Within this City was great riches, which was divided among the Souldiers.

CHAP. XLVII.

How *Valentine* returned backe to *India* after the bartell, and bare with him the dead body of *K. Murgalan*. And how he heard ridings of his Father, and how *Pacolet* freed the *Indian K.* and left *Brandisser* in prison. And how *K. Lucar* caused all that hundred that watched the *Indian* to be drawn to death at horse tailes, and how *Valentine* and *Pacolet* departed secretly out of his host, and went to *Angory*, and of the vision of King *Pepin*, and how he went into the holy land with the twelve Peeres of *France*, and what happened. And how *Hausfray* and *Henry* betrayed their father King *Pepin*, and the twelve Peeres of *France*. And how the Caliph of *Bendas* made truce between the *Indian*, *Lucar* and *Brandisser*. And how *Hausfray* to further his Treason came before *Lucar*.

Lucar and Brandiffer, and how he was intrapped in his own net. The City being taken by the Christians, Valentine finding the body of Murgalant in the field caused it to be put up, and covered with black. After certain daies sail, they arrived where Lucar and Brandiffer were, and in mourning manner brought it before the two kings as they sate playing at Chess. As soon as King Lucar saw Valentine, he said: knight welcome home, how fareth and speedeth our forces, have you put the Christians to the worst, and taken Pepin and his Nephew Orson? Alas (said Valentine) it is fallen out contrary, for we have lost the field and all our men are slain. For K. Farin that had the whole charge of the watch, let his men sleep, and so the Christians came and made habock of our Army. As soon as I got any tidings hereof, I awakened my men, hoping to save them, but it was too late. In this battell is slain your uncle Murgalant, whose body I have here brought. This spectacle fretted Brandiffer at heart, that in madness he threw away the Chess-board, and said, surely Valentine thou wert the cause of this. Quoth Valentine, I returne him the lye that sayes so, and I will maintain mine innocency with my sword. Nay (said King Lucar) if he hath plotted any treason, he would never have come again: then Brandiffer commanded the body to be royally interred.

This newes gladded the Indian, and hereupon gathering up all his forces, he issued out of the city. The battell being begun, Valentine threw himself into the thickest, so that none durst stand before him. At last meeting the Indian king, he smote him off his horse. Pacolet seeing him down, he led him unto Valentine, and unto the tent of King Brandiffer: when tidings came that the Indian was taken, he called unto his men, saying: Follow hard and the day is our own, so they entered the battell, and drave the Indian to a retreat. When Brandiffer saw they withdrew themselves, they followed them to the gates, where fell on both sides a great slaughter. The battell lasted so long that it was night, and Brandiffer and Lucar betook them to their tents, and bad that the Indian king should be brought before them. When K. Lucar saw him, he said unto him: Traitor, the end of thy life is now at hand, The Indian made shift to understand him, but said never a word.

King

King Lucar had no sooner ended his rough speech to the Indian king, but there arriued a Messenger, who said unto Brandisser: I bring you sad tydings, O king, for Pepin King of France hath taken your City of Angory, and put unto the sword man, woman, and Child. These are ill tidings indeed (quoth Brandisser) but seeing we have the King of Inde in subjection, I hope shortly to free mine own Countrey. Then he said unto King Lucar, Some we have the king of Inde in hold, let us make short work with him, and to morrow morning let him be hanged up: which being done we will speed unto Angory against the French, and take vengeance for these wrongs done unto me. Also, I have there in a strong Castle, the Emperoz of Greece, and the Green knight prisoners; who at my comming shall suffer death. Valentine being present, was glad to hear of his Father, so by a sign, he acquainted Pacolet that he should shortly stand in need of his Art, who inwardly bowed he would find some meanes to release them out of prison. Also, the Indian king looked wistly on Valentine, and said thus to himselfe: Cursed be that houre that thou escaped my hands, for had I put thee unto death, these dangers had never befallen me, then King Lucar called a strong guard of armed Sarazens, and said unto them, keep well this traitor, and on the morrow he shall be hanged. So they took him and brought him into one of the Pavillions, and bound him about the middle to a Post, and so left him, falling to play again. Now Valentine called Pacolet unto him, saying I am half in doubt whether Brandisser have my Father in hold, for if I were assured thereof, I would not have endangered my body as I have done, in his service: but now is the time to be rebenged. Sir (quoth Pacolet) you have small reason to bear him good will, therefore, if so you please, I will find a way to free the Indian King and to deliver Brandisser into his hands, so may your uncle Pepin hold Angory still. This quoth Valentine would bee worthy of thanks, wherefore prosecute thy Plot, that so I may help mine uncle, and deliver my father. Pacolet having an eye to what he would do, after supper came among those hundred that had the charge of the Indian king. After they had made fire without the pavillion, Pacolet cast them all into a dead sleep. Having so done, he went to the Indian King, and said: Noble king, be glad in mee for

I am Mahomet, and am come to set thee free, Thou shalt goe to my Pallace, and beare along with thee Brandiffer, who shall not know whether he goeth. Alas (said the Indian to Pacolet, taking him for Mahomet) it should seem I haue deserued well at thy hands when thou takest such paines to come down and deliver mee from death, and my enemies. King (said Pacolet) trust in me, and beleue the counsell of thy wife. Herewith Pacolet led him towards Brandiffer, causing all the watch to fall into a dead sleep, and so enchanted him that hee arose: made him ready, and went along with the Indian king into his Pallace.

The Indian being thus set free, gave thanks to Mahomet for his deliverie, then Pacolet brought him a horse, made him mount him, and set Brandiffer behind him, sent him packing for India, and so took his leaue. At last the Indian came to the Gates of his owne City, and calling the Porters was instantly let in: when Rozamond beheld him, she said: sir, you are right wellcome home, but tell me how you came by my Father, that you haue brought him with you, is there a peace concluded? No (quoth the King) Mahomet delivered him into my hands, and freed me from death. So by this time ended the vigour of the charme, and Brandiffer awaking, began to say: How came I hither? Some Diuell hath enchanted me, nay said the King, Mahomet hath brought us hither, that you may be at peace with mee. I had rather die: therefore set me free, that I may go to my Host againe: not so, for since you are here, I meane to keep you. How the Sarazens that guarded the Indian, lie still asleep: At the break of day, Lucar came to the Habitation where the Indian lay, but when the Pagans saw him they cry for mercy for they had lost their prisoner. Warlets quoth Lucar your lives shall pay for it, so he caused them to be drawn along the streets on horse backs, and after hanged, whereat Pacolet laughed: but Valentine said, friend I shall neuer be at ease, till I haue found out my father, whom Brandiffer keepeth in prison. Here Valentine and Pacolet leade the Pagans, and after travelled to hear tidings of the Lady Clerimond.

You haue heard before, how the Pepin toke Angory, so now will I make plaine to you the manner of a Treasor toward him by Haufrey and Henry: it happened as the king was in his bed in

Angory he had a dreame to this effect: He thought he beheld a masse Priest, shewing unto him diuers Reliques, besides a sumptuous Sepulchre, and thre times this apparition troubled him: the morning being now come, he called before him all his Barons, and declared unto them the manner of this dreame: and said unto them, Lords I know not what may befall, but I thinke it some delusion, or else it may be that I should go visit the holy places without the City of Hierusalem. Then spak Orson I will go with you if so you please, and I also quoth Myllon Daugler: after, the twelbe Pères offered themselves unto him to assist him in his Pilgrimage. The king hearing them so forward, gabe them thanks, and calling before him Haufray and Henry, he said unto them: Haufray, you know you are my naturall son, but yet in such a time was you gotten, when I had not one foot of land in France, wherefore it is my will that you inioy this land of Angory, therefore keep it valiantly.

Then Haufray said unto Henry brother you understand the king our Father well, do you not? He will prefer us to strange lands, as if we were not worthy to be his sons. Now as for his young son Charles he prohibed to leaue him R. of France, and we must be contented with a foreign part: therefore be ruled by mee, and Pepin shall never return into France to establish his heire. Wee will work a plot to deliuer him into the hands of the Pagans, and then shall we be kings of France, and Emperoz of Rome, all which I thirst after. Brother quoth Henry your words are well put together, but how shall this thing be accomplished? Haufray said, I shall tell thee how: Go unto King Brandisser, and tell him, that I must haue his Daughter Galazy, and being with him, tell him that king Pepin and the twelbe Pères of France do determine to goe to the holy Sepulchre: and they may be easly surprised, for they take along with them but a few ar traine. Brother this will doe well, wherefore make hast to India there shall you find Lucar & Brandisser when you haue found them acquaint them with the plot, and I will go along with you. So sa, quoth Haufray, for I shall never be at quiet, till this businesse be finished. Thus had they plotted treason against their Father, who had now entred the Seas, thinking to accomplish their pilgrimage, Henry going along with them, & Haufray likewise hath taken his way towards India, to leaue we them, and enter into other matters.

The Caliph of Bendas, being come into the Host of Brandiffer and Lucar, treated a truce for a month betwixen them and the king of Inde, so appointing a day to meet thereupon, the Caliph began thus to say: Lords it is known unto you, that the Christians have won the Realme of Angory, wherefore I wonder that you continue here maintaining a needleswar, and suffer the enemy to grow upon you in a place of such import: therefore list a while to what I shall declare: True it is, that the king of Inde slew your Father Trompart, for that he kild his uncle: this was one for another. Wherefore let the Indian deliver Brandiffer, and as for Rozamond, let her be brought and set betwixen the two Kings, Lucar and the Indian, and if she will stay with the Indian, let her, if she will go with Lucar, let him receive her. This his counsell was generally accepted, and Rozamond was brought forth, whereupon the Caliph propounded the matter for which she was called, Rozamond having heard what was said, she resolved to keep her to the Indian king, and Lucar departed away very sorrowfull.

The same day that the Caliph made this conclusion, Haufray came unto the host of Lucar and Brandiffer, and making hast to their Habillions, he saluted them, unto whom Brandiffer said: What wind hath driven you hither, sir said Haufray, that I have to deliver crabeth secreesse and attention. So they dze from their attendants and then Haufray said, Lords, you all know that I am Son unto Pepin K. of France, and I also understand, that you (speaking to Brandiffer) have a beautiful Daughter: now if it please you to give me your Daughter in marriage, I will deliver into your hands my father, and all the Peers of France, that have so much dammified you: for know, that in the habite of Pilgrims, they have taken their journey to visite the holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem, stenderly accompanied. Quoth Brandiffer for these tidings I wil give thee my Daughter Galaaz, but it must be upon condition that you renounce your faith: yes (quoth Haufray) what shall I do. When Brandiffer saw the treachery of Haufray, first that he would betray his father, next, forsake his Religion, he with-drewo himself to advise with Lucar & the Caliph, saying to them, you see the Treasons of this man that demandeth my daughter, how dare I trust him that seeketh the death of his Father, and ruin of the whole State

of France? No, I will not make my peace with such an homicide, I had rather see my Daughters death, then gibe her to so vile a Traytor. After these words he called to Haufray, and said, Sir: I am glad of your coming, and this shall be your taske, you shall go to my Daughter and bear her this letter from mee, there passe away your time till we have further leisure to resolve on your businessse, Sir said Haufray I am ready to accomplish your demand, so he delivered him the letter, and 100 men to conduct him on his way, after they were at Sea within few dayes they came within sight of the strong Castle where Galazy was: when they were come unto the gate of the Castle, The Porter called unto them, saying: My lords you may not enter without some certain token. Porter said Haufray tell the Lady that we shall satisfie her, the Porter went unto the Lady, and said: Lady without the Gate stand a company of men that saine would enter, and as I thinke they are come from your Father. The Lady had her Gentleman-usher go know what they would, and of whence they are, who did as shee commanded: as soon as she understood he came from her Father & Brandisser, she bound up the Lyons and opened the Gate, so Haufray entred, and thought all this had been for his good, but it fell out contrary, for hee by treason was entrapped. Being entred the Castle, hee was brought befoze the Lady Galazy, whose beauty eben amazed him, so that he was not able to speak one word. After some time of pause, he saluted the Lady, and said unto her, Faire Soberaign know, that for the great renowne that I have heard of your most excellent beauty, I have left my Country and passed the seas, to acquaint your father with that which shall make him happy, and for that you shall find me speake nothing but truth, lo here is a Letter sent by me from your father.

The lady taking the letter, read it: when she had read it, shee beheld Haufray saying: Wastall I have read thy Letter, and I find thee a chystian, and that thou hast sold the life of thy father and the Twelve Peers of France: all this my father certifieth by his Letter unto mee, and commandeth mee, that I determine what shall be done unto thee. Now for that I understand thee to bee a most perfidious Traytor, I sweare by the Law I professe, I will neither take pittie nor mercy upon such a wretch as thou art: so shee called.

called unto her officers, and committed him to prison in a darke Dungeon. Haufray seeing what had happened, said, it is a bitter marriage to mee: instead of having my person, you shall be master of my prison, and so he was conveyed away forth of her presence. Now in the same Dungeon, lay the Emperoz of Greece, and the Green Knight: and when they heard they should have another fellow prisoner, the Emperoz so soon as he came in, demanded of him whence he was: Haufray said, It is no matter of whence but I am that unhappy Haufray, Bastard Son of King Pepin: why quoth the Emperoz, I am the Emperoz of Greece: can you tell mee how it fareth with my Brother King Pepin, and my two sons, with the residue of the Peeres of France: sir said Haufray, they are in this Country of Angory, and have wonne the same in battell, So leaue we them in prison, and return to Valentine and Pacolet.

CHAP. XLVIII.

How Valentine and Pacolet came before the castle, and how Pacolet raised up the devill, to aske his counsell about the taking of the castle. And how Brandiffer brought the twelve Peers of France into his strong castle, and imprisoned them. And how he besieged the City of Angory. And how Brandiffer having knowledge that Lucar was captive in Angory, made means to Valentine to deliver him upon sufficient ranfome.



After many dayes saile, these two arrived at the Castle and biewed it strangely, thinking it impregnable: at last Pacolet said, sir anon I will tell you more, so he went aside & cast a figure, incontinently there appeared unto him a devill, who said unto him: leaue off your enterprize for the castle is not to be take but by treason also banished: Suddenly after his departure ther arose a great smook about the castle, inasmuch as Valentine, lost the sight of Pacolet, and was given into an amazement. This mist being dispersed, Pacolet came to Valentine, and said: Let us depart for there is no way to conquer this Castle but by treason: so they forsook the Castle and went towards Angory, being there they demanded tidings of King Pepin,



pin, but it was answered hee was gone to Jerusalem on Pilgrimage: so Valentine resolved to stay there till his uncle returned, but all in vain, for by treason of Haufray, King Pepin was surprized by King Brandisser, as you shall heare.

King Pepin being come to Jerusalem, by the direction of certain guides they were conducted to the holy places. During the time of their abode here in Jerusalem, came Brandisser, the Indian King, and R. Lucar (having had intelligence by Haufray, as before you have heard) accompanied with a great Host of men, and marched so far that they came unto the King of Sury: being come unto him hee did very much marvell at their comming, and after salutations demanded the cause: Then spake Brandisser, Sir, know this that by a Christian we are informed, that lately there is come into this holy City certain pilgrims, the one of them is Pepin K. of France, the rest are the twelve Pères: if it be so, we craue your aid and assistance, for they are unto us mortall Enemies, and have taken from me my City of Angory, making great spoiles within
 15 b my

my Territories, wherefore we desire you that they may be deli-
 bered into our hands that we may proceed against them according to
 our lawes: your demand is but reasonable (quoth the K. of Sury)
 therefore let all be done according to your wish, for I am an enemy
 unto all such as shall deride us and our religion: Now hearken a
 little what I shall undertake. I will send unto the Patriark about
 this matter, and if he have any such French Pilgrims, that he pre-
 sently bring them before me. The King of Sury sent a messenger
 unto the Patriarke to bring them before him, then the Patriarke
 went unto the Pilgrims, and said: Friends you must come before
 the King of Sury. Whereat Pepin grew exceeding sad, for he thought
 he should loose his life, but yet he ruled a little, and I will tell you
 what we will doe: let us here make Henry our Lord, and I will
 wait upon him like a Page bearing his hat and staffe. Henry being
 too skilfull in treasons denied it, saying here is Orson, and Duke
 Myllon, more worthier then I, let them take it upon them, quoth
 Myllon so you please, I shall do any thing: so they took their way
 toward the Pagan that sent for them. D. Myllon took upon him the
 person of the King, and the King was his Page, and bare his hat and
 staffe. The Patriarke after he had delibered them to the King de-
 parted, and the King of Sury said unto them, it is told me you are
 all French-men, come as Spies and amongst you is the King of
 France: sir said one of the company the King of France is not here:
 Now not here (quoth Sury) if he doe not shew himselfe openly I
 will commit you all to a grieuous death. Then spake Henry the trai-
 tor first, and said, it is not I. At these words D. Myllon doubted
 treason, and said, sir I am the King of France, but withall, suffer
 me to tell you a thing worthy of note: we are all Christians, and it
 is free for us to go safely, even by your own Lawes and Customes
 of your Country, paying a certain tribute: Now this tribute is by
 us daily paid and obserbed, therefore you offer us much wrong, to
 detain us contrarie to your Customes.

Say what you will (quoth Sury) but to Spies there is no such
 priviledges allowed: and now he called forth Brandisser and Lu-
 car, and said unto them: Lords these be Christian Spies, take them
 and doe with them as pleaseth you, these words being uttered the
 Pilgrims were laid hold on, and then Brandisser said, Lords, let
 these

these be conueyed to my strongest castle, and put them into the deepest Dungeon : which done, let us make hast unto Angory, and beat out all our enemies. After into France to bring that to our subiection, all this may easily be effected, for we have all the Peeres thereof in captiuitie, so that there is not a man of worth to make resistance. This done, the Indian King required that amongst all those prisoners he might have the little one to make his dwarf, (of which was King Pepin) his request was likewise granted : so he took along with him K. Pepin, and loved him exceedingly.

The Indian king taking his leaue, ebery one of the Peers looked pittifully on king Pepin, but durst not speak unto him. Pepin being on his way with the Indian began thus to lament : *Woe unfortunate am I among men ? Alas Duke Myllon, it grieueth me most for thee, for thy love towards me hath brought thy self in danger. But for my son Henry, I lay all my curse on thee that refuseth to releue thy father in case of extremitie. Farewel Berthe my wife, & my yong son Charles, thy case is most dangerous, for what will not traitors attempt against thee ? By this time is the Indian come home into his own land : When the Lady Rozamond saw his approach, she was right glad, and receiued him with much kindnes, at last, she shewd her eyes on K. Pepin who was of small stature, and demanded of the king where hee had that little man. Lady said she K. he was giuen me at Jerusalem, being come thither with the K. of France, and the twelue Peers.*

But now let us return to speak somewhat of Clerimond who was in the Court of this Indian King. The kings manner was, to send her ebery meal of the best meat from his own Table : and one night at supper time called Pepin unto him for to carry her provision, saying unto him, Go into the great chamber on the other side of the court, there you shall find a foolish woman, bear this from me, Pepin did as he was commanded, but when he saw her in those base rags, he said unto her : *I pittie your distressed estate : when the lady heard him say so, she said : friend pittie thy self, let me alone, I am not what I do seem to be : but tell me art thou a Christian ?* Lady (said Pepin) *I am, and come from the Realm of France. When the Lady with a smiling countenance said : know you then K. Pepin, and his Nephew Valentine ?* I

quoth Pepin and his brother Orson, and his Father the Emperoz of Greece? The Lady hearing him say so, began to shed teares, and yet spake, saying, friend, may I put trust in you? I said King Pepin, eben as well as if I were your naturall Father, then thus: know for certaintie that all that I habe done is but counterfeit, for I am a Christian and the woefull love of Valentine, that was given unto him as his wife, but I was betrayed & stoln away by the traitor R. Trompart: so then she unfolded the manner of all these things: when R. Pepin heard the lamentable adventures of this Lady, he began to weepe, and said unto himself these words *Ha*, what trust is in this world? *Alas* for this poore Lady, alas for Valentine, and yet to see, it is my chance at last to find her out in this unlookt for adventure: After he had ended all these lamentations, he said: Lady, now I doe understand whom you are, and sith you trusted me with the secrets of your heart, gibe me leaue a little also to shew you whom I am. Here you see me, and in what shape I go clothed: yet know, that I am Pepin R. of France, and by disastrous chance I am fallen into this servitude. As for Valentin, know that hee undertaketh dangerous adventures, and continueth still without taking any rest: Now I habing knowledge of you, if betwixen us we can make those tidings known unto him, with great joy you may embrace each other. At these words the Lady swooned, but Pepin seeing her recovered, left her, & came unto the King being at Supper. So here we rest to talke any more of this matter, and return to say somewhat of Brandisser and Lucar who are busied in leading the twelbe Peeres of France to prison.

Brandisser habing the twelbe Peeres in prison, and with them Haufray and Henry, the only workers of the treason, came unto his Castle, where hee told all the whole enterprize to his Daughter, how the twelbe Peeres fell into his hand. Habing finished his tale he conveyed them into a Dungeon whereas the Emperoz, the Green Knight, and Haufray lay.

Henry was much troubled that he durst not discover his mind to Brandisser: for he was the first that was let into the Dungeon: after him Myllon Daugler, who by chance fell upon Haufray, which made him angry: Be not angry quoth Myllon, for there are many more to come down after me, to whom you must gibe place. Haufray

fray knew after that it was D. Myllon, and demanded of him by what means he came thither? Ray (quoth Myllon) I rather wonder how you came hither, for I am sure wee left you within the City of Angory. Quoth the Traitor, I was taken for a Spy, and for that cause am I hither brought: Now, are all these Lords resolving in prison, but when Haufray understood that R. Pepin was not among them, he seemed outwardly exceeding glad, though in heart he could wish his death. Every one looked for nothing but death, save only Orson, and he bare it out comfortably, saying: Lords let us yet trust to my Brother Valentine and Pacolet, who by enchantment can do much, but he little knew that the Castle was impregnable. Brandisser having thus made all sure, called before him his Daughter Galazy, and said unto her, I must depart to satisfie mine army, being there I shall meet with the Indian King and Lucar both which will aid me against the French, that holdeth the City of Angory: therefore keep well my prisoners, so hee departed. And when he came unto his Army, he found Lucar ready, but as for the Indian King hee sent his forces, and came not himselfe, by reason that Rozamond was lately dead.

The two Kings gathered up their forces, and took their way toward Angory, whither being come Valentine had knowledge thereof, who kept the City for king Pepin. This amazed much the Noble Valentine, when he saw the Tents so neie him: At last hee called Pacolet unto him saying, I wonder I heare not of my uncle Pepin: fear not (said Pacolet) for ere long we will hear better news and therewithall departed from Angory, and never rested untill he came unto the camp of King Lucar, who ebbing him demanded of him what news, and what was become of his Master who so long time hee had serbed? Pacolet answered, Sir hee is long since dead, and I am come to seeke a new Master. Quoth Lucar wilt thou serbe me? Yes (quoth Pacolet.) Thus was he received into his service, but he ill rewarded his new Master: for the same night by enchantment he cast Lucar into such a sleep that he cast him into the City of Angory. Valentine was right glad of this, and Lucar being placed before a fire the enchantment ceased, and he awoke. Being awaked hee became sore astonished to see himselfe thus betrayed, and at last Pacolet said unto him: Master I am at

at your service, have you any thing to command me. At the which words, Lucar grew much enraged, and taking a knife gave Pacolet such a wound, that he fell down dead. Valentine seeing this accident, was exceeding sorrowfull, and said: such another friend shall I never have. False Traitor, quoth he, thou hast slain him that was all my hope, if thou have, thou shalt surely pay for it. Then said Lucar, I am glad that I have slain that Traitor.

Now Valentine went towards the dead corps, and took out of his bosome a pair of writing Tables, in which was written the whole manner of his Art. These tables had Pacolet ever made Valentine acquainted withal, wishing him that if he out-lived him he should make great account of them, so Valentine put them up, and after made use of them. Here would Valentine have K. Lucar put to death, but being better advised, he was safely kept in prison: for if so be that any worthy personage should be taken by the Pagans, then the body of Lucar should serve for ransome of the other. Thus Valentine caused the body of Pacolet to be interred in honorable manner, whose death was much bewailed of all.

The next morning there arose an out-cry throughout the army, that Lucar was gone no man knew how: Amongst the rest, Brandisser made great lamentation, till one told him that he was in Angory and how he had slain Pacolet. Brandisser was glad Pacolet was slain, but sorry for Lucar: at last calling to him a messenger, he sent to Valentine to aske him if he would deliver Lucar for King Pepin, or the Emperour, or Orson or any other of the twelve Peers of France, the Messenger departed on his way with these conditions and coming to the City of Angory: desired to speak with Valentine: after salutations on both parts, he declared the message from king Brandisser, Valentine hearing the effect of his message, was much amazed, and said to the Messenger how cometh it to passe, that Brandisser can make choice of all these valiant men, how became they his prisoners? Quoth the Messenger I think it is not unknown, how that K. Pepin accompanied with the twelve Peers of France, not long since went to Jerusalem, and having amongst them one traitor, was delivered into the hands of Brandisser, and by him taken in Jerusalem, and committed to prison, wherefore having thus related unto you the truth, said, will you change

change one prisoner for another. Messenger, I shall give answer to thee anon, so entering into the Hall, hee assembled unto him all his counsell: saying to them: Thus it is, that for our prisoner Lucar, we may have delibered us, either my Father, or my Brother, or my Uncle R. Pepin: now in this case let us resolve what is to be done. The Lords replied, you are most bound to your naturall Father, and therefore we adjudge it most fittest to release him.

Lords (quoth Valentine) you have well advised, but yet I am determined to do otherwise, for you all know, that my mother was wrongfully banished, and in her exile brought mee forth and my brother in the Forest of Orleance, where we might both have been devoured of beasts, if mine Uncle King Pepin had not taken mee up. Thus he nourished and brought mee up unto mans estate: after he made me knight, and hath bestowed upon mee many preferments: therefore I say, these things considered, my will is, that my uncle be set free for King Lucar, he being thus at liberty, wee will shortly wozke the freedom of my father, and all the rest. When the Barons had heard the wisdom of Valentine, they agreed all with one voice, that he had nobly spoken. Then called they unto them the messenger of Brandisser, and said, friend, returne this answer to thy master: tell him that I shall willingly yeld the body of R. Lucar, upon condition that hee deliver unto us the body of King Pepin, so after due reverence done the Messenger departed. Being returned home, he delibered his Message as Valentine had delibered it to him, whereupon Brandisser stooze by the gods hee should have his request.

CHAP. XLIX.

How Myllon Dangler (who was taken for the King of France) was delivered out of prison, instead of K. Lucar. And how Valentine and the Duke Myllon issued out of the City of Angory, and won the battell from the Sarazens. And how King Pepin was delivered in change, for the King of Indies Marshall: and left Angory, and returned into France to succour his Wife.

Brandisser understanding Valentines mind, hee suddenly dispatched other Messengers to his daughter Galazy which kept
the

the strong Castle, willing her to deliver unto these messengers the King of France, and let all the rest alone. The Maiden hearing her Fathers mind, readily obeyed, calling before her the Jaylor of the prison, and commanded him to call forth the King of France. The Jaylor went unto the prison calling for the King of France, for I am commanded to set him at liberty. Duke Myllon hearing him say so, could not so satisfie himselfe, but in doubting manner said: I am here, wherfore doe you call me forth, if it be so that I am the first must suffer death, I am ready to lay it down to maintain my religion. Sir (quoth the Jaylor) it is no such matter, for you are to be delibered body for body, to ransom another Pagan King, which resteth in captivity among the Christians. When Henry heard these words, he repented him that he had denyed to take upon him the person of the King. Thus D. Myllon took his leave with tears: the Emperoz of Greece said unto him: aboue all I pray remember me to my son Valentin, & me too (quoth Orson) and tel him in what misery we lye, requesting him either quickly to tooke our deliverie, or we are not able to indure our libes. Myllon comforted them all he might, and said unto them: Lords, I will never returne into France, till I see you at liberty, and so hee took his way. Being out of prison, he went to the Lady Galazie, and did unto her reverence, which she kindly accepted, and commended him to his fortunes: So the Duke goeth along with the messengers that were sent for the King of France. When they were come before Brandisser, he said unto him: King, I would have you know wherfore I sent for you, & to that end, I have appointed those messengers that brought you hither, to conduct you into the City of Angory to Valentine, & in your stead, to send me back my son Lucar, as he hath promised. Sir (quoth the Duke) all this shall be effected to your wish, and if he will not deliver King Lucar, according to your expectation, I shall willingly come again & yeld to your mercy. Royally spoke (quoth Brandisser) I ask no more. So the D. took leave and departed with the messengers towards Angory. After few days they arrived, where they had free access to the Pallace where Valentine lay: being come in sight of one another, they kindly embraced: after Duke Myllon took Valentine aside, and related unto him the whole course of his actions, and how King Pepin was set
at a way

away by the Indian King, who knew not how he was, and how he had taken upon him the Kings name, only to shield him from danger. When Valentine heard this, he thanked him for his deed, and began to recount what a benefit had happened to him, that he was delivered and the rest left in bonds, for by your true loyalty to your Sovereigne, you are escaped from danger. Valentine having ended this discourse he caused R. Lucar to be brought before him, to whom he thus said: King Lucar, for this time you are set at liberty, but if ever you happen again into my hands, I shall remember you for the death of my friend Pacolet, to whom you have slain: these words being ended, he delivered him unto the messengers: now was Lucar delivered, and the D. Myllon restored in his roome. Valentine having gathered more strength, by adding unto his powers the Dukes company: they gathered all their scattered troops up into battell array, and with the number of 50000 fighting men, they issue out of the City upon the Enemy. Brandisser hearing hereof, made up against him, accompanied with 24 Kings his attendants, all holding him their Cheife Lord, but their number was so infinite, that the Christians could not come next to doe them any harme.

When Valentine resolved to give a new on-set upon the Pagans and courageously heartning his men, he set upon that part wherein was Brandisser and King Lucar. In the thickest of this battell, an Admirall (who was Lord of Cassidon) espied a French-man making havock with his Sword amongst the Pagans, he made towards him, and hitting him with his Axe, he clabe his head in two peeces: having newly done this deed, he was espied by another French Cavalier, who making towards this Admirall, in the presence of Myllon Daugler, he smote him stark dead: for the which act of valour Myllon knighted him, and said among them all, that he that won valour should receive the like reward. In this manner continued the battell all that day, even till the Sun-set. At last they strove on each part which should sound retreat first, but neither side would yield, so that the fight continued all night, till the next morning, making great fires to give them light. At break of day, the battell began a fresh in most fierce manner, that blood ran down as water in channells.

Valentine and D. Myllon behaved themselves right ballantly, for on ebery side they beat down both horse and man. But Valentine was too forward, for he entred so far into the enemies Campe that he came very neer the standard of Brandisser. Being there, the Indian Admirall espied him, who run so fiercely at him, that he flew Valentines horse under him, who perceiving himselfe unhorsed lightly got upon his feet, and with his sword hewed out a passage, but he could not have escaped, had not D. Myllon by chance relieved him with a fresh horse. So Valentine retired himselfe out of the battell to refresh his tired limbes. When the Indian Marshall saw their side had the worse, hee by his policy withdrew his forces, and in the night time stole out of sight, so that at last they be-
tooke them to their heeles and ran away.

Valentine perceiving it, told D. Myllon thereof, so they determined, that Valentine and his Troopes should set upon the Marshall, which they did, and fell upon the Indians in such furious manner, that they upon the first adventure brake their battell array. The Marshall seeing it thought to have fled, but Valentine meeting him at this advantage, lent him such a rap with his Speare, as both horse and man fell to the earth. Being on the ground the Sou-
diers would have killed him, had not Valentine charged them to the contrary, and committed him to the custody of foure valiant knights.

In this bickering there were many prisoners of account surprized and taken, all which Valentine sent into Angory to be kept in safety. By this time of the day Brandisser and Lucar knew that they had the worse, but they could not make resistance. At last, they resolved to returne again into their owne Countries, and reunite their forces afresh. So wrapping up their Ensignes, they took their flight towards the Sea-coast: and the Christians followed after, killed all that withstood them. Of all the Pagans multitudes that went into the field, there escaped but a 100 persons. They being gone, the Christians rising their tents found inestimable treasure, and having so done they returned to Angory, to rest their tired limbes.

After the Christians had won the battell, and given buriall to the dead, Valentine commanded the prisoners to be brought before him.

him. Amongst the rest was the Marshall of India, of whom he demanded if he would forsake his Mahometry? The Marshall answered that he would sooner forsake his life, Then D. Myllon demanded of what country he was: he said I am a Marshall of Inde, and one whom the King loveth. Quoth D. Myllon unto Valentine, we are made happy in this prisoner, for in exchange of him we shall release R. Pepin who was led away by the Indian King to bee his Dwarf, when we were taken prisoners at Jerusalem. Then they demanded of him if the King had not in his possession a Christian of low stature? yes quoth he, there remaineth such a one in his court; but not as his prisoner, and thither was hee brought when the twelve Peers of France were taken in Jerusalem. Marshall quoth Valentine it is he after whom we enquire, wherefore let him be brought hither, and delibered to us, and you shall be set at liberty, for he is a page whom I ever loved, attending upon my person. At these words the Marshall rejoiced, & sent letters to the Indian King. The messenger being dispatched, he brought letters to the Indian R. when he had read them, he was willing to change (for hee knew not that it was R. Pepin) and calling him before him, he then said: Friend, we give you free liberty to depart my Country, for my Marshall being taken amongst the Christians, shall be surrendered in your stead. R. Pepin thanked him, and having taken his leave of the R. he ran unto the Lady Clerimond, and said, Lady take good heart, for I am set at liberty, and I will send Valentine unto you, who will soon worke your release. The Lady hearing this was very joyfull, & Pepin departed with the messenger towards Angory.

After some few dayes they arrived there, where the Frenchmen spared for no cost to shew their loves to R. Pepin, and at last Valentine came and said, uncle we had good hap in taking the Marshall, for we have by that meanes procured your liberty. Propheto (said R. Pepin) you above all men have most cause to rejoyce for I bring you the happiest newes that ever you heard, and this it is: Faire Clerimond, whom you so long have lost, is now found, and by me sendeth you hearty commendations: then he related her misfortunes, and how she had demeaned her selfe to shun the love of the Indian King. Valentine hearing this joyfull tidings, he uttered these words; Dear Lady, thou hast bought my Love at too

dear a rate, and cursed I if I prove false, and for trypall hereof I will either purchase thy freedom, or lose mine owne life. This speeche and other affaires being ended, the Marshall was delibered. Then Valentine besooke him to his Chamber to try the Tables that he took out of Pacolets bosome when he was slain, and found every thing set down, to fall out just as it was now come to passe, & taking unto him pen, inke, and paper, he wrote down what there he found, and sewing it into his doublet (for feare of losing) it stood him in great stead after for the safeguard of his life, as hereafter will appeare.

King Pepin being resident in Angory, newes was brought him from his wife Berthe, that all France was doubtfull of his life, & of the twelue Peers of France, because they heard they were taken Prisoners by the Pagans at Jerusalem. This report turning for current throughout France, hath caused Arthur K. of Brittain, with a puissant host to enter the Kingdom, and so to win the Crowne of France by violence. Also the said Arthur hath committed to exile your yong son Charles. When K. Pepin had heard these tidings, he grew wonderfullly distempered, & presently called together all his Barons, and sate in counsell what was requisite to be done in such a desperate plot. At last it was resolved, that K. Pepin in person should depart into his owne land, to suppress the Usurper, which he accordingly did, and comming unto Valentine he began to speak unto the K. Faire Uncle, it were most requisite that I tarry here to gather new forces, to rescue my father and the twelue Peers of France. Do so (quoth K. Pepin) and if it so fall out that I overcome, I will furnish you with fresh supplies against the Pagans, that you may with more ease compass what you intend to do.

CHAP. XL

How Valentine under the shape of a Physician went into India, to see and speak with the fair Clerimond. And how Valentine rode away with her, and how the K. of Britaine was given to king Pepin by treason. And how Valentine took the strong castle, and delivered his father, the Emperour, and all the rest of the prisoners. And how the Emperour, Orson, and the Green knight, kept a strong garrison in this castle, and how Haufray & Henry compassed the death

of their Father. And how the Emperour of Greece, Orson, and the Green knight left the castle, and came to the succour of Valentine in Angory. And how the Christians issued out of the city of Angory, and bid battel to the Sarazens. And how Valentine ignorantly slew his own father. And how Myllon Daugler returned into France, and Valentine and Orson into Greece.



Du have heard already, that A. Pepin brought newes unto Valentin of þ Lady Clerimond, which having heard, it would not out of his mind: at last he resolved to passe from Angory to India, accompanied with one squire, & in þ shape of a phisition, he went to sea with þ Indian Marchants: being arrived he lay in the city at an Inholders house, till his gownes and other habiliments were in a readines. At his first entrace in this Tyme, þ host asked him what he was, he said a phisition, & can cure any manner of disease. The host beleved him, & his squier served him as his Apothecary or Clerke. In this manner lying there about some thre days, he called his host to him, & desired him to get a man to go about the City to make knowen his Art, and see who needeth help that he may cure them, for I faine would get something to defray my charge while I lie in your house, but in the mean space rather then you shall mistrust me, I will leave you a good patron: Wherry (quoth the host) with all my heart, I accept your gage: So Valentine delivered him a rich Gantle, furred quite through with costly Furies, and had him bring before him that party that should make knowen his Art. The Host went out and brought him a ragged fellow, who had not any thing to hang upon him: Valentine yet was glad of such a fellow as this, and new clothed him from head to foot, and said unto him, my friend, go thy ways into the City, and cry about the same, that there is come a Phisition that can heale all manner of diseases, even mad Men or Women he will undertake the cure.

This fellow did as he was commanded, and passed from place to place to publish this Doctors skill. At the last these tidings came to the King, because he had given out that he could recover mad folkes to their former senses: So the King bearing good will to the

Lady Clerimond, sent for this Physician, although he had before him many Cripples, blind, lame, and crooked, at his lodging, but he left them all and came unto the King, for there lay the marke at which he aimed. Being come before the K. he did his obeysance in the name of the great God Jupiter: and the King said unto him sir you be welcome to my Court, first dine, and then I shall tell you further the cause of my sending for you. The K. being set a serbed, made Valentine also to be richly attended, and dinner being done said unto him: Sir, I have a beauteous Lady in this Pallace, whom I would make my Queen, for I love her dearly: she would by no meanes consent, untill the tearme of one yeare was expired: I granted her to forbear that yeere as she demanded, but at the end, she was possessed with a Lunacy, inso much that none durst come with in her reach: sometimes she whistles, anon she cryeth out in a pittifull manner: another while she laugheth, & then she falleth into a flood of tears, so that my heart is overcharged with sorrow for her: now if your skill extend it selfe to cure her, I will give you more wealth then thou canst aske: for my wife Rozamond being dead, I would make her Queen of India. My Lord (quoth Valentine) feare not but she shall do well: for she is the harder to be cured, in that it hath seized her so long. Again, I must be with her all night to marke the manner of her fits: you shall (quoth the K. have one appointed to bring you thither, but looke to your selfe least shee harne you.

When one who waited on the lady, guided Valentin to her window: now go thy way and leaue me alone. When Valentine beheld her in this desperate case, he said alas my love, you have bought me deere, as I have you, but by the Gods I sweare, I shall neber returne againe to France till I have you along with me, or here lose my life. The Lady beheld him fearfully, and whatsoeber came first to hand shee threwo at him, which much amazed Valentine. Then said Valentine is this true madnesse, or but feigned? Deere love (quoth he) tell me the truth, I am Valentine your Love, for whom I have suffered all this dammage, think on the brazen head that you gave mee, or of my brother Orson that had the string cut in his mouth, or how you were stolne away by the Enchanter Adrimaine. When the Lady had heard this, she fell into a swoond

for

for joy, and being againe recovered, she said; alas my love, how many dangers have we passed through: you for me, I for you: and now behold for you, in what basenesse I have carried my selfe, for thee? Lady, love dearly bought is the sweetest. By this time the Trumpets sounded to bring up the Kings meate for Supper, so that he said unto the Lady: My love I will go into the Pallace, but after Supper I will come againe, for the K. knoweth not but I am a Physician, & hath sent for me to heal you: the Lady had him go. Being come into the Pallace, so soon as the K. saw him, he demanded of him if he could heal the Lady: (Phe quoith Valentine) to morrow you shall heare her speake as discretly as eber she did. The K. was so joyfull thereat, that he gave unto him a rich Mantle all beset with precious stones, and caused him to sit downe at his own Table. After Supper Valentine said unto the King, it is necessary I have a fire all this night in the chamber where my patient is, for she will be extream sick all this night. Well quoth the king, let all things be done, spare for no cost. Now Valentine taketh his way toward the chamber of faire Clerimond, with one who carried wood to make this fire withall, which being done, he willed every one to depart, save only his squire, then Valentine shut all the doores and windowes, and said unto Clerimond: Sweet Lady, now may we embrace at our pleasure, & casting his eye aside, he espied the Horse of wood, and asked her whose it was, who answered Pacolets, then said Valentine let us hence immediately, whereunto she consented.

Valentine being somewhat acquainted with Pacolets Horse, mounted him with Clerimond, and his Squire, in a Moone-shine night, and with great expedition hasted unto the City of Angory, being come thither Valentine caused the gates thereof to be opened and there was great joy for the Lady Clerimond. The next morning Valentine caused her to be clad in rich habiliments, and married her, By this time the King knew of her escape, & grew frenzied, and said: Ha, thou false Chancher hast thou thus deceived me? if thou fall once againe into my hands, I will quickly bereave thee of thy life, and so he caused pursuit to be sent after Valentine, but all in vain, for they found him not: Here leade wee them. Now I proceed to tell you of King Pepin how he hasted into France to the

succour



succour of Berthe his wife, and to chastise the Usurper. The King of Britaine not thinking what would happen, strengthened himselfe with all the forces he could make, and sent out proclamation, that all that could beare armes should assist him into France, Whereupon Queen Berthe with her young son Charles fled to Lyons to take succour: At the same time liued a worthy and trusty Earl of Anioy, who labouring the Queen, and pittying her distresse, fortified his Castle against the Britaines, to whom the Queen sent 4000 horse to keepe the passage. At last the King of Britaine bad the Earle giue him passage into France, but he answered no. Whereupon there was appointed a band of Soldiers, to lay siege to Argiers, but the Earle kept close within the City, and would not issue out thereof. During this siege was King Pepin come to Paris, & there was joyfully receiued: when the Queen understood he was at Paris she hastned unto him, and when she came before him in tears she said: Dear Lord, rebenge us on this Usurper. Lady (quoth the king) feare it not. So calling about him his Countsellours and
 men

men of war, he made hast to furnish up his companies, and many there were that voluntarily offered themselves to do the King any service. By this time the King of Britain heard that A. Pepin was coming against him with a great Army, which feared him, and not without cause. But see what followed, for his own friends betrayed him to A. Pepin, only to save their own states, and make their peace the better with the A. So resolving herupon, on a night they came to him lying in his bed, and led him per force before A. Pepin, who presently caused his head to be smitten off within the City of Paris. Now thought they that betrayed him all was well: but the A. afterwards seized all their Lands into his own hand.

Now was Valentine much troubled in mind, how he should free the Emperors his Father from imprisonment, for he knew well that the Castle was not to be won by war or policy, nor by any thing, but by treason: At last he resolved on a subtle plot, and thus it was: He put to Sea twelve ships, manned with 2000 men, and laden with all manner of riches, as precious stones, and silkes, and thus as Merchants arrived they, before this strong Castle.

Valentine took upon him the shape of a Merchant, setting a rich Crown on his head, and said unto his men: be you all privately armed within the ships, so that none of you be seen, if the Sarazens come aboard, put them to death. Then coming toward the Castle gate with the Crown on his head, the Porter said what bring you hither? friend said Valentine I am a Merchant going into Spain, and having many rich commodities, I heard say that I might not passe without a tribute, on paine of death. Said the Porter, I will go to my Lady and bring you an answer, so he went to Galazy, and told his message, the Lady understanding there was such precious Jewels aboard, she said to her Sencschall: Goe and receive the tribute due to me of the Merchant, and take along with you a sufficient company of souldiers, least they should offer you injury. He did as he was commanded, and coming to the ships, they found inestimable Jewels, insonmuch as they were ravished therewith, so they taking the value of the tribute due to the Lady, suddenly the Christians that lay hid in the ship set upon them and slew them. Then Valentine said unto them, except we go forward, in this enterprize, we shall never gain the Castle, wherefore hee

caused 50 of his men to put on the Sarazens gowns ober their Armoys, and so lading themselbes with silkes and pprecious stones, took their way towards the Castle.

The Porter tyed up the Lyons, let down the draw-bridge, and thirsting after some great reward, went beyond his bounds, insomuch as Valentine led him to the ships, being come, Valentine shewed him their dead bodics, and said, I wil make you like one of these, if you giue me not passage into this Castle, sir (qd. the Porter) I shall do it. Why then qd. Valentine I will reward thee. Come said the Porter, and bring all those men whom you have clad in the habite of Sarazens, for they cannot be known from them in the castle, and let them enter one by one, which they did: so being entred, the Porter shewed them a secret Posterne, which Valentine having gotten, caused all the doores to be set open, then winded he his horn, at the which all those in the ships hastied unto him. Then he entred the chamber of the Lady Galazie who was astonied thereat, but he said, Lady, fear not, for I have ventured the Seas to have a sight of your royall presence, then she had him welcome, and highly feasted him. Valentines men having entred the Castle, with their shouts so affrighted the Lady: that in weeping manner she said unto him, Courteous knight, save my Virginitie. Lady (qd. he) fear not, for there is none that dares attempt any dishonour towards your person. By this time all the Pagans within the Castle were slain, and Valentine hastning unto the Dungeon, did break it open, and cryed out aloud, all you that be alibe, come forth. Orson knowing his voice, replied: Brother, you are welcome, how came you hither. Valentine said I am come to set you at liberty. At these words, the Emperoz fell into a swoond, but Orson suddenly recovered him. Then came they out of the Dungeon, in ragged cloths, and ill coloured faces: but the Christians rebelled for the space of 7 daies in the Castle, and Orson falling in love with Galazie, after the death of F. zon married her, by whom he had a son (named Orsayre) who after held the Empire at Constantinople.

These affairs being thus brought to an end, a counsell was called, what was best to be done: at last they resolved to leabe a Garrison to resist the Enemy: Some said it was fitting that Haufray and Henry should undertake this task: but Haufray replied, not we

we, for we are determined to go for France to serbe our Father. Mo. Orson if you be so resolbed, we have small reason to tene for your departure, for there is nothing but treason in you. At these words Haufray & Henry were displeased, but they durst not shew it. At last it was resolbed that the Emperoz should take his rest, and his Son Orson and the Green Knight should remain there to defend the Castle, whilst Valentine with the rest addressed themselves for Angory. Nowe will we look into the treason of Haufray & Henry who being come into France, laid a plot to take away the life of their Father, of little Charles his son, and Berthe the Queene. Being come to Paris, the King royally feasted them, and after demanded what newes of the Emperoz, Valentine, Orson, and the rest. Mo. the traitors, they were all slain in a battell at Angory, at which the king waied wondrous sad. After this they poisoned the K. and Queene. Nowe little Charles was still libing, who (as the gods would have it) hapned under the safe keeping of Myllon Daugler.

The king and Queene being both thus treacherously poisoned, the two Traitors seemed to be exceeding sorryfull, but D. Myllon Daugler being a man of a baliant and couragious Spirit, forthwith caused a counsel to be holden, wherein he would have crowned young Charles K. of France, but Haufray & Henry by bribes so corrupted the Lords, that Charles was held too yong: Hereupon D. Myllon was committed unto prison, for standing on the Childs part, and Charles held as a kitchen boy.

A little after, it hapned that Haufray commanded Charles to turne a spit, but the Boy being full of majesty, took up the spit and felled him unto the earth. At this, out slept Henry, thinking to smite the child, but he being ready to receive him, gave him such a bore on the eare, that the blood issued out of his mouth. Then Haufray commanded his men to lay hold upon him, but there came a knight which took Charles by the hand and conveyed him to Paris. The traitors perceibing Charles was gone, made out after him, but he could not be found. Hereupon D. Myllon told his wife thereof, who was sister to Charles. The Lady could not behold the same for teares, but bowed that they should dearly pay for these Treasons, and forthwith caused letters to be written into Angory, unto

unto Valentine and the Twelbe Peers of France. These Letters came first into the hands of Valentine who could not choose but weep at this Act of Willamp: the Lords perceiuing his tears, asked the cause, he answered, king Pepin & the queen are dead, and as for Charles, the two accursed brothers, Haufray & Henry, have chased him out of the Country, imprisoned D. Millon, & all that held on pong Charles his side: these are the contents of these letters, and the lady that sendeth them, requireth help to apprehend these reuels. These sad tidings put them to their wits end, & lying betweene two extreames, knew not which way to take, for Brandisser was daily expected with an Army of many thousands. At last Valentine said, Ere to morrow night I will set free D. Millon, or else my skill shall deceibe me. at which they laughed heartily, but Valentine departed, and with Pacoleis horse he suddenly arrived at Paris, where by his Art he opened the gates, & releases all the prisoners, and being shewed the Chamber where D. Millon was, he entred the same, who being fast asleep, he awaked him and said: Sir, I am Valentine which am come to set you free. Then he mounted him on his horse, and bad him not speak, for he was to passe through the ayre. The D. prayed him to passe by the castle of Angier, that he might but see his Wife, which he did, and being come to the Lady thereof, who presently ran & kissed him, demanding of him whither he went: Lady qd. he, I go to fight against the Infidels, to bring home the twelbe Peers of France, with an army to overthrow Haufray and Henry, & to succour Charles. Having refreshed themselves with meat, they set forwarde towards Hungary. Being come, they came before all the Barons, who were much astonished at Valentines art, greatly desiring to learn it, but he would teach it no man. Now was Brandisser with his host come within a mile of Angory and there planted his siege. The Citizens hearing hereof, shut up their gates, drew up their Bridges, and after got on the walls, lying a month together, without making any resistance.

The Emperoz hearing that Brandisser had begirt Angory with so huge an army, resolved to leade the strong castle to the guard of a knight. So the Emperoz, Orson, & the green knight, took shipping, accompanied with a 1000 souldiers, being at Sea, they saw

a great fleet of ships coming to them: & at last they found it to be a Pagan with 10000 men going to the succour of Brandisser: the Christians longing to fight with the pagans, fell upon them so that there chanced a bloody battell: great haloz was sholten on both sides, but they knew not whether the victoꝝ would incline. At last the Pagan Admirall encountering a Christian knight, tumbled him over ship-boord: Orson standing by him grew angry, & taking his Are struck him stark dead. This deed so discouraged the pagans, that they withdrew to themselves all that night ready to flight, having lost 15. tall ships, and 4000 men. Then the Emperoz said, Lords let us arme our selves with such weapons as here we have seized from the Pagans, which they presently did, but this enterprise was fatal, for the Emperoz was slain by his own son Valentine, who took him for an Infidell, as hereafter you shall hear. But here they hope sail again, and at last arrived in Angory.

After a months siege Valentine sent a defiance to Brandisser, offering him battell. The Christians divide their battell into Ten Squadrons, whereof D. Millon was their Generall: the second Sampson of Orleance, the third Earl of Vandosme, the fourth Earl of Champagne, the fift Quintine of Normandy: the sirt the D. of Burgoyne, the seventh the Earl of Dampmartin, the eight the Earl of Aslerue, the ninth the Marshall of Constantinople, the tenth was Valentine who added courage unto all the rest. Being in order, they sallied out of the City to assault Brandisser, who had divided his army into fifteen Squadrons, and that Squadron which had the least commander was a king. At the joining of these battels, a certain Pagan (that never before had been in wars) couch'd his spear in rest, and would be the foremost man, but Valentine thinking to cool his pride, ran against him, and stroke him down dead. Then they fell to it pell mel, wherein the Christians behaved themselves valiantly. The Indian king entering the battell, made very much slaughter, but Valentine meeting him, gave him such a Counterbluffe, that he set him beside his horse.

At this present the Christians got the better, and caused the Infidels to give ground, but there came in a Sarazen Captain with 30000 men, and continued the battell more hotter then before. By
this.

this time R. Lucar lighted on the Indian R. and lent him succour. Now the Christians began to retire, insomuch that they had been forced to a shameful flight, had not two balliant knights arriued in Angory with 700 men at Arms (the which lately had come from the holy Sepulchre, & suffered much misery) entred the field. The one of them brought into France the daughter of a rich Admiral called Claridine, & caused her to be baptized. The name of the one was Reynard of Province, the other Myllon of Dyon. At their approach the Pagans was much discomfited, for Myllon of Dyon at his first encounter smote R. Lucar stark dead, and at the next another R. called Rubres, which accident much amazed Brandisser. At another part of the battell rushed in Reynard, and slew many of them. Valentine wondred at these two knights of Chivalry, and coming toward them, said: Lords you are welcome, I pray you what are you, or by what chance came you hither: Friend (quod Reynard) we are Lords of France, and lately come from the holy Sepulchre, who hearing of these wars, we thought it requisite to defend you against the Pagans. I am called Reynard Lord of Province, and my companton is called Myllon of Dyon. Quoth Valentine once again heartily welcome, for Myllon Daugler is here, and all the Peers of France, so they joyntly rushed afresh into the Battell. All this while the Indian R. had a spleen at Valentine for his last disgrace, and finding him out, accompanied only with three other kings, they so encountred Valentine, that they did smite him and his horse to the ground. Being down, he quickly recovered, and drabwing out his sword defended himself therewith, but with much danger. At last D. Myllon, Sampson, and Gervais, came unto his succour, getting a fresh horse for him. Valentine being mounted made his course against the Indian R. again, and striking him down, took from him his shield which he kept (for he had lost his own.) This ended, Tidings came that a great fleet of Sarazens was comming neer unto the Haben. Hereupon Valentine said, Lords, let us presently go and strengthen the Passages, so Valentine and the D. Myllon of Dyon, went unto the Haben. But these were all friends and Christians, amongst whom was his Father the Emperoz of Greece, of whom you shall hear moze at large.

The Emperoz habing landed his men, Valentine saluted him with

his

his spear in his rest. The Emperoz (who bare the shield of a Sarazen, unknown) encountred with his son. At last Valentine ran his spear quite through his fathers body, that he fell down dead. His father being dead he said, Montioy vive Greece. Orson seeing his father dead, did weep, and said unto Valentine: brother, there is small conquest in this, for you have slain your Father. When he heard him say so, he fel in an extasie from his Horse. To this lamentation of the two Brothers came Reynard of Province, and Millon of Dyon, to comfort them, saying, knight have patience, for teares cannot recall him: alas said Valentine what have I done, It were happy for me, if death would take me from this World: I have committed this fact, detestable both to Gods and men: What will become of me: my life have I passed away in troubles, toiments, and cares, and now to adde more sorrow to my daies, I have shed the blood of my dear Father. Brother Orson, take my sword, and cut off my head, that the earth may not bear so bloody a Butcher. Brother said Orson, despatre not thus, but repent, and no doubt but you shal be forgiven. So comforting him in this manner, at last they got him to his horse, whereon being mounted, he ran throughout the pagan troops so furiously, that all they that stood in his way perished. Now began the battell to increase, and king Christopher slew the Christians on every side. At last Valentine meeting him, gave him such a canbisado, that he pierced his body quite thorow. In this battell the D. Myllon of Dyon, and Reynard of Province, rushed so fierce into the battell of the enemy that they were taken prisoners, yet notwithstanding their adverse fortunes, they got their liberty once again, and made Charles K. of France, with honour and joy, to the destruction of Haufrey and Henry, the two notable traitors: yet was not this fierce, long, & tedious battell ended, for they stood to it manfully on either side. Valentine being carelesse of life, at last met with Braddiffer who encountred each other so fiercely, that both fel to the earth, but Valentine suddenly recovering himself, took the K. such a blow, that he clave his head. K. Brumant seeing his brother slain, departed out of the field, with the Admiral of Cordes, and K. Iosueh, who caused a retreat to be sounded. The Christians following, slew many thousands, and others leapt into the sea, and drowned themselves.

So the night drawing on, the Christians returned into the City. Next morning in burying the dead, there was great lamentation for the Emperour of Greece. Then his body was royally interred in the city of Angory, but Valentine could not be comforted.

The Pagans being thus twice put to the worse, before Angory, D. Millon took his leaue of Valentine to return into France, saying, Valentine I would I could return as swiftly back, as you brought me hither. Friend (said Valentine,) I would I had neuer known the Art, for it hath brought nothing but vexation & shame on me, & him an untimely death that taught it me: so the D. Millon departed. Valentine & Orson intended to go for Greece, but before their departure, they crowned the Green Knight K. of Angory. After leaue taken, Orson called the fair Galazy unto him and said; Koe, know you are now with me, yet I cannot wed you for that I have another wife, but before I go, I will make certaine Lands ower unto you for your maintenance, that you may hereafter live of your self without the help of any other. All these offers she denied, but saying she would go to sea with him, and after confine me unto some religious house, wherein I may spend the residue of my daies. Agreed (quoth Orson) and so he took her with him to Constantinople. Being come thither, they sent word to the Emperesse of their Fathers death, but concealed by whom it was done. The Lady was sorrowfull for her husband, but ioyed at the sight of her children: so did all the City likewise, making great triumphs throughout the same. The Emperesse being one day at dinner, said unto her Sons, Valentine it must be agreed betwixt you twoo shall be Emperour. Orson replied, It appertaineth not to mee to take the first place, whether let it be as I say, for I am beholding to you, you nothing to me, therefore take the Empire, and trow the Scepter.

At last, it was agreed on, that they should jointly govern, but Valentine continued not long in that state of dignity, for shortly after, on a morning, he called to him Clerimond, and said thus unto her: Understand me, you know that I have slain my Father, and my conscience remaineth still troubled for the fact, and I am therefore minded to go on Pilgrimage. Commend me to my Mother, and my brother Orson, both which I charge you not to see till fifteen

teen daies be passed ober, and then gibe him this letter, all which the Lady must consent unto, although in teares.

CHAP. LI.

How *Valentine* took leave of *Clerimond* before his Pilgrimage, and how *K. Hugon* demanded *Clerimond* for his wife, and how he betrayed *Orson* and the Green knight. And how *Galeran* delivered his Letters to the Ladies, and of the grievous lamentations they made. How *Bellysant* and *Clerimond* came to know King *Hugon*'s treason, and how *Galeran* lost his head. And how *Orson* and the Green knight were set free.

When *Valentine* said, Lady cease your teares, and gibe me your wedding ring : she having done so, he broke it in two peeces, keeping the one halfe, and gibing her the other, saying, my love keepe thy halfe, and whatso-



ether you hear, beleebe nothing till you see this other half which I possesse. At these wordes he embraced her and wept bitterly, and so departed, only one page with him. Having long travailed, at last he came to Rome, there comming into the presence of a Hermit, he confessed the death of his Father, the Hermit seeing him so penitent, enjoined him penance: First, change thy habit and go barep cloathed, and 7 yeares lie under the staires of thy pallace without speaking any wordes, thou shalt neither eat nor drink but of the scraps that come from thine own table, do this, & feare not thy sins. Sir said Valentine all this I will do: so after he had dined, he departed without speaking to his servant: after this Valentine entred into a wood, feeding upon hots: and he continued there so long that he was forgotten amongst men.

Orson having now read the Letter that Clerimond delibered him, wept bitterly, insomuch as the Lady said unto him, Brother cease your laments; alas said Orson I have great cause, for this Letter sheweth that my brother will never return: hercat the Lady swoounded, and recobering her selfe, she said, why hath my brother hidden his intent from me? but all her sorrow could not call him home again. Rydings was spread through the City, that Valentine would never return: Clerimond wailed, Bellyfanc complained, and Orson sighed. Now (as the story saith) the lady Fezon hearing that Orson had got another Lady with childe, she died with grief. Being dead, Orson made a yeares solemnity of her funeral, & after married with Galazy of whom ye have heard before.

Now I shall shew you how Valentine came back to Constantinople in beggerly weeds, insomuch that he was not known, going from house to house a begging. At last, he went into his brothers pallace about supper time, and those that waited on the table, beat him away: Orson seeing them so currish, bad them let him alone, for I am willing that all poor men shall be received for my brother Valentines sake, that so we may hear tidings of him. After this they brought him meat & wine, but he espying a basket wherein the scraps were put, eat therof, which amazed the beholders. Night being come, the serbitors asked Orson if he would let that counterfeitt abide in his pallace. I (sd Orson) for it may be for some how which he hath made. Thus abode Valentine, and made his bed under the staires,

Sairs, of straw. On the morrow, Orson passing by, gave him money, after came his mother, and his wife Clerimond, and they gave him money saying, how can you endure thus naked without clothes, this night you shall have some provided for you. They being gone, he gave his money to two poor men standing by him, who scoffed him for his labour; next day at dinner they gave him barbery of meats, which he refused, and made signs for the alms-basket: Orson to try him yet further, caused some of the best meat to be put therein, but he would not touch it. Then (said Orson) surely this is some how that he hath made unto the Gods. Thus Valentine remained within the Pallace without being known, that all men thought him dead.

In these daies there was a K. of Hungary, named Hugon, who heard that Valentine had given over the Empire of Greece unto his brother Orson. This Hugon came to Constantinople, and was honorably received. After his arrivall he came to the Lady Clerimond, and said, I am King of Hungary, and have no wife, and for that purpose am I come hither to crave your love. I know that Valentine is dead, or else that he will never return, wherefore Lady grant me thy love, and thou shalt be queen of Hungary. Sir, qd. the Lady, I thanke you for your kingly proffer, but to be your wife I cannot, for sure my Valentine, lieth, and for 7. year I will every day expect his return: besides, when I make choice of a Husband, my brother Orson and the Green knight must know, for without their leave I will never marry. Then he went towards Orson and demanded of him, if he heard any tidings of his brother. Great K. (qd. Orson) no: I heard that he left me a letter, the which his wife delibered me, and certified me that he is gone to exile, & beareth about him halfe the ring that he was married withall, the other half he left with her, charging her that she beleve nothing of him, till she see the other half which he possessed. The Gods be his good speed, qd. Hugon, for he was a worthy knight. But one thing qd. Hugon, have I more to acquaint you with, I am determined to take a journie to Jerusalem, to visite the holy Shyrine, so you would bear me company. With all my heart (qd. Orson) but let us go to Angory, with us the Green knight, who is K. thereof: it shall be so qd. Hugon: so Orson taking leave of his mother, and his wife

Galazy, came to Angory & was receiued with great ioy. Having feasted there, they took their way to Ierusalem. Being come into the City, (while they were beholding diuers monuments) Hugon stole away from them to the R. of Sury, & said: I haue a message to deliuer worth your attention: There is newly arriued here two worthy knights that are your greatest enemies, for they slew King Brandisser, R. Lucar, & your brother R. of India. When Rabastre heard al that he could say, he was very sorry for the death of his brother, & said unto Hugon, can you deliuer me these two knights? he said the traitor, so you will giue me their golden seals: Sir qd. he, them and much more will I giue you: Then hearken, send unto the Patriarks house, and he will tell you where they are. The R. presently sent out 800 armed men, and found them at dinner, then they took them, and brought them unto the R. False enemies (qd. the R.) to our libes and religion, my heart euen leapeth for ioy that I haue gotten you, tel me what are your names? My name is Orson, & this the Green Knight. You are the men I sought for, & there is another called Valentine, had I him also, I would use you all alike: then he caused their seals to be taken away, & giuen to Hugon, and they to be cast into a Dungeon, and fed only with bread and water. Now all this while they knew not what was become of Hugon, for they thought verily he had been slain by the Sarazens, while he was plotting with another Traitor in the City, called Galeran, and began thus to sollicite him. Galeran my desire is to imploy your secrecie in a matter of import, and I will reward thee sufficiently. Winkle (qd. Galeran) fear me not, I know your drift, you would obtain the lovely Clerimond: true said Hugon, therefore let us write a letter in the name of Orson, and we will seal it with his seal, and the letter shall be thus framed.

Orson by the power of the Gods, Emperour of Greece, unto the thrice renowned Soberaign Lady my Mother: unto you my love Galazy, and my sister Clerimond greeting. Know this, that many things are fallen out contrary to our expectation, which are here set down, requirring nothing but patience: Ladies, know that I haue found my Brother Valentine on his death-bed at Ierusalem, and a little before his last Gaspe, he charged mee to salute Clerimond in his name, and command her, that if euer shee

ſhee marry again, ſhee take ſome Prince to her Husband; the cauſe why he ſent not the halfe King was, for that it was ſtolne from him in his ſickneſſe.

This Letter thus finiſhed, Orſon wrote another letter ſaying: Right wel-belobed ſiſter, we haue ſaid enough about my Brother Valentine, but now we wiſh you for the great beauty wherewith you are adozned: firſt to accompliſh the deſire of the dead: ſecondly to increaſe your honour, we aduiſe you to match with Hugon Prince of Hungary, as you will aboid our diſpleaſure. And for further authoriſty, we haue ſealed, theſe letters with our own ſeals. Again know, that we cannot yet return, for great wars is fallne between the Infidels and Chriſtians, ſo we leaue you to the tuition of the Gods; theſe letters being ſealed, Hugon gave them to Galeran to bear to Conſtantinople, himſelf following after, by this means thinking to get the Lady.

Galeran being in Conſtantinople, delivered his Letters to the Lady Bellyſant, who commanded that he ſhould be highly feaſted. Afterward, ſhe called one to read them, and Valentine lying in the Hall heard the contents thereof. Being read, the Ladies grew extreme ſorrowfull for the death of Valentine, but eſpecially the Lady Clerimond pittiouſly lamenting her miſfortunes, ſaid: How unhappy amongst women am I? Alas Valentine, why went I not with thee, to ſee thy body laid up ſafe in the earth? unkind brother, and the Green knight, why are you two ſuch mortall enemies, as to wiſh me to marriage ſo ſoon after my Valentines death? ſeeing I haue loſt ſo noble, couragious, and loving a knight: the Mirror of chivalry, the roſe of honour, the example of curteſie, & the patron of truth. Death, haſt thou not one dart left to ſhoot at this poor heart, for ſeeing my life is nothing but ſorrow, I will neuer have other Husband, but in ſorrow will I ſpend the reſt of my daies? All this did Valentine behold, which he pittied, but fearing to be known, he buried it in ſilence. Bellyſant ſeeing Clerimond thus biſolent, ſaid, daughter haue patience: You know he was my ſonne, and I ſorrow for him at my heart, but when I conſider that he cannot be ſetht back therewith, I paſſe it over, and rather thinke on what my brother, and my Son Orſon doth aduiſe you unto. Good mother (ſaid the Lady) ſay no more, for I will neuer marry, and there-
there.

therewith went weeping to her chamber, and Valentine he lay under the stairs, musing how these treasons should come about. Some four daies after came H. Hugon to Constantinople, and was received with great honour, but Clerimond shewed him no good entertainment. Being there, he said unto the Emperesse, you understand of the death of your Son, for whom I am sorry: But is it agreed upon, that I shall marry the Lady? Sir (quoth Clerimond, I am not willing to marry you, nor any other: all this treason Valentine heard. But in the end the matter was so urged, that Hugon had the Lady, which much increased his joyes, but they were short.

Valentine having ended his Orisons to the Gods, the Oracle made answer to him on this manner: Valentine, get thee out of the City, there thou shalt find without the gates a Pilgrim, take his Pilgrim weeds, and when thou hast put them on, get thee to thy place, and there shalt thou reveal before all commers, the treason practised against thy lobe, for in this disguise thou canst not be detected. Valentine did as he was commanded, came to the court in this disguise, in the presence of the Ladies, and amongst them was the traitor Hugon, even he that uttered such reproachful words against Clerimond. Now Valentine came to Belysant saying, Lady, I beseech you shew me the Wife of Valentine, whereat Hugon blushing replied: pilgrim, get thee gone into the kitchen, for this is no place for thee. Sir said Valentine, I would fain do a message to her: wouldst thou said the Lady, I am she whom thou desirest to see: then thus, I have lately seen your lobe Valentine, that by me sendeth salutations, willing me to say, that within three daies he will be with you. Pilgrim (quod the Lady) advise well thy selfe what thou speakest, for I heard my lobe is dead. Lady (quod the Pilgrim) beleeve it not, for I protest to deliver my body to death, if it be not true as I have said. Hugon hearing these words related to the ladies, secretly mounted his horse, & never returned back. The Ladies on the other side, were much amazed at the Pilgrims tale, and offered to feast him, but he would not: only he said to them, Ladies pardon me I pray, for I have certain companions in the towne, which I must needs visit, therefore I request your pardon: yet Clerimond would gratifie him for his news, giving him mony, which

which he bountifully bestowed again upon the Serbants.

Presently after it was demanded what was become of R. Hugon: a Damofel standing by, said, I saw him now take horse, but what is become of him, I cannot tell.

Upon these words Galeran came in, and they demanded of him, what was become of his uncle Hugon, who making no reply, Belysant grew enraged, and said, you shall not escape, til you have revealed the treason Hugon hath practised against us. Then Galeran said, Ladie take mercy on me, and I shall tel you all: say on, I pardon thee. Mine Uncle is guilty of Treason, and hath sold to the Pagans the Emperoz Orson, & the Green Knight, which tale soe danted the assembly, but Galeran was presently hanged. Then Valentine leaving the habite of a Pilgrim, returned again unto the Pallace. Clerimond espying him, said, poore man where have you been, me thinks you seem distressed, because I said I w^{ill} not marry. Valentine replied not at all, but left her: yet she not so contented at his dejection, caused a costly quilt to be brought for him to lodge upon, but he refused it.

King Sary having Orson and the Green knight in hold, caused them to be brought before him, and said unto them, Lords you see you are now at my mercy, wherefore I bid you, you shall never escape with life, except you resign backe unto me the City of Angory, which you with-hold from me. Orson replied we will never consent hereunto, except thou gibe R. Hugon unto us. The King said unto them, speak not of him, for he is the Traitor which hath sold you into my hands, & hath carried with him your seals. Orson marvelled much hereat, and strove that he would never rest, untill he were rebenged on him, and so did the Green knight also.

Now it so fell out, that these prisoners were content to yeld to the kings demand, and so returned to Constantinople. Being come home, Clerimond told him, that she had heard tydings of Valentine, which much rejoiced Orson, who lying with his wife that night, got a Son called Morant, who after ruled Angory. Not long after, Orson gathered an host of men to goe for Angory, which when Hugon heard, he offered to him the said City, and a horse load of Gold: and if there were any man durst call him traitor (Orson excepted) he would fight with him. The green knight accepted

cepted his challenge, & they armed themselves, & the green knight came first into the Lists. All things set in order, they encountered each other with their spears, next with their swords, but at last the Green knight gave king Hugon such a stroke on his helme, that he cut a part of his head even off at the shoulders, so that he fel into a swoond. Thus the green knight got the honour of the day: Hugon rebibing again, requested a confessor, and unfolding all the Treason presently died in the place, Orson notwithstanding caused his body to be sumptuously interred, as to the person of a king appertained. At last Hugons treason being blown abroad, by the Nobles consent, rendozed the City to the Emperoz Orson. This being ended, they returned into Constantinople. At whose comming home Valentine rejoiced, but Clerimond marvelled that she saw not Valentine, as the Pilgrim had said unto her, little suspecting that he was so near her, for he remained under the pallace staires, where he shall shortly end his life, and then he shall be known.

CHAP. LII.

How at the end of Seven yeares, Valentine died in the pallace of Constantinople, and how Orson turned Hermit.

AT the end of seven yeares Valentine fell into a mortall disease, whereof he died. Before his death an Angell appeared to him saying, Valentine, thy glasse is run, for within four houres thou shalt die: whereat hee greatly rejoiced, making signs for pen, inke, & paper: when he had it, he wrote, that it was himself that appeared like a Pilgrim, and discovered the treason. After putting to his name, he closed up the paper, putting in the other half of the King that he had kept: shortly after he laid him down and died.

When Orson saw that he was dead, he was troubled in his mind, The poore man being dead, held a letter in his hand, which Orson would have taken out, but could not: then came Clerimond, as soon as she laid hold thereon, the hand opened it selfe. Clerimond breaking up the Letter, and knowing the half King, said: Lords, we shall shortly hear news of Valentine: so a Secretary was called to read it, at the reading hereof, was great lamentation on each side,

live, but especially of Clerimond, who falling upon the dead body, said: Alas I have lost all my joy, comfort and hopes, for that my love should die so neer my person and I nat know of it. Now great preparation was made for his funerall rites, he was interred in great magnificence in Constantinople. Clerimond afterward betooke her to a single life. Thus having shewn the death of Valentine, and what became of Clerimond: let us returne to Orson, who ruled the Empire of Constantinople seven yeares, and by his second wife Galazy he had a Son named Morane, who after was King of Angory.

After 7 yeares were expired, Galazy dyed, for whom the Emperour Orson was exceeding sorrowfull, and in the end betooke him to the Woods, whereas he fed on Bread and roots, such as he found. It happened one night that he saw a vision, it seemed to him more glorious then his tongue could utter. After this vision he awaked, and being astonished thereat, with teares he came to the Greene knight, and said: Sir, I see the uncertainty of the world, for which, I am willing to resign my estate and children unto you: See them well educated, that they may by you be made fit to governe such a people, for I will spend the rest of my daies in solitary contemplation. When the Greene knight had heard these words, he wept bitterly, but Orson recomforted him, saying: weepe not, but pray for me, as I for you, that you may accomplish that which I put you in trust toithall, whish this Orson departed, charging the Greene knight not to tell it to any. So taking his way towards a wood he there spent the remainder of his daies. The Greene knight after so governed his children, that they carefully spent their time on earth, and followed their Father to his Grave.

FINIS

Gg

The Table.

How King *Pepin* banished his Queen *Bertha*; And how he gave his sister *Bellysant* in Marriage to *Alexander* Emperor of *Constantinople* Chap. 1.

How the Arch-priest of *Constantinople* betrayed the Emperor his Lord and Master, in making love to the Empresse, and what evill followed thereupon. Chap. 2.

How the Arch-priest having received this repulse at the hands of *Bellysant*, to save his own honour, practised Treason against the Innocent Lady. Chap. 3.

How the Arch-priest put on him the habite of a Knight at armes, and being well mounted followed the Empresse *Bellysant*, who was lately banished. Chap. 4.

How *Bellysant* in her banishment, was delivered of two faire Sons in the wood, whose Names were *Valentine* and *Orson*, and how she lost them. Chap. 5.

Of the Bear that bare away one of the Lady *Bellysant's* Children. Chap. 6.

How by the counsell of the Arch-priest, new customes and Taxations were raised through the City of *Constantinople*, and how the Treason came to light. Chap. 7.

How the Emperor by the counsell of his Nobility, sent for King *Pepin* to see the combate fought between the Arch-priest, and the Merchant. Chap. 8.

How the Merchant and the Arch-priest encountred at the place appointed, about the clearing of *Bellysant*, and what a glorious victory did befall the Merchant. Chap. 9.

How King *Pepin* returned from *Constantinople* into *France*, and after failed to *Rome*, to fight against the Sarazens that had surprised that city. Chap. 10.

How K. *Pepin* besieged *Rome*, and how *Valentine* jested with the admirall of the Sarazens and slew him, whereby the City was won again from the Sarazens. Chap. 11.

How

The Table.

How *Haufray* and *Henry* repined at the love the king did shew towards *Valentine*. chap. 10.

How *Valentine* conquered his brother *Orson* in the Forrest of *Orleance*. chap. 13.

How *Valentine* having conquered *Orson* the Wilde-man, departed from the Forrest towards *Orleance*, whereas King *Pepin* was resident. chap. 14.

How *Haufray* and *Henry* took counsell together to murder *Valentine* in the chamber of *Eglantine*. chap. 15.

How Duke *Savary* sent unto King *Pepin* for aid against the Green Knight who would have his daughter in Marriage against his will. chap. 16.

How divers Knights arrived at *Aquitane*, at a solemn Jests there holden to bear away the love of the beauteous Lady *Fezon*. chap. 17.

How *Haufray* and *Henry* accompanied with a Troop of their Confederates lay in ambush to take away the life of *Valentine*. chap. 18.

How *Orson* and *Grygar* fought together, how *Orson* returned victor, caused *Grygar* to confesse the Treason, who was after hanged, and *Valentine* delivered from the Dungeon. chap. 19.

How *Grygar* being vanquished by *Orson*, confessed his treason to K. *Pepin*, and how *Haufray* and *Henry* had been the only plotters thereof, against the worthy *Valentine*. chap. 20.

How *Orson* conquered the Green Knight, and what followed thereof; also, how *Valentine* attempted to fight with him, but could nor overcome him. chap. 21.

How *Valentine* took good advise, and sent *Orson* on the morrow (in his place) to fight with the Green Knight; and how *Orson* overcame him. chap. 22.

Orson having conquered the Green Knight, *Valentine* caused him to be christened, and sending him to King *Pepin* had knowledge of his Father and Mother, by meanes of the Green Knight. chap. 23.

How the same night that *Orson* was made sure to the Lady *Fezon*, an Angel appeared unto *Valentine*, and of the charge shee gave unto him. chap. 24.

The Table

How King *Pepin* came to the knowledge that *Valentine* and *Orson* were his Nephewes, by the report of *Blandimain*: and how the Greeke Knight submitted himselfe, according to his promise made unto *Valentine*. chap. 25.

How King *Pepin* departed from *France* towards *Greece*, to bear these tidings: and how before his return, he warred upon the mighty *Soldan*, who had beleagured *Constantinople*. chap. 26

How the Green Knight justed against the two *Sarazons*, and having slaine the one, the other fled: and how King *Pepin* and his host was lodged within *Constantinople*. chap. 27.

How *Valentine* and *Orson* arrived at the strong Castle where fair *Clerimond* was, and how by the Brazen head they had knowledge of their parents. chap. 28.

How (when as *Valentine* was before the Castle talking with the Guard) *Clerimond* bewayled the love of *Valentine*, And how he Justed for the entrance, and overcame the Seneschall. chap. 29

How *Valentine* shewed *Clerimond* her brothers Ring, which the green knight gave him, and how hee questioned with the Brazen head, which told him from whence he was descended. chap. 30

How the Giant *Ferragus* had knowledge of all that past betwene his Sister and *Valentine*, by the meanes of one *Pacolet* a Dwarf, and an Enchanter. chap. 31

How *Pacolet* hereupon made another expeditious journey into *Portugall* to see the Lady *Belysant*, *Valentines* mother, and of his returning backe, and the newes that hee brought. chap. 32

How *Valentin* and *Orson* were betrayed by the treachery of *Ferragus*, and how hee committed them to prison, with their wofull lamentations. chap. 33

How *Pacolet* the Dwarf comforted the two Ladies. chap. 34

How by Art *Pacolet* set free *Valentine* and *Orson* from the prison of *Ferragus*, and conducted them out of his confines, with their Mother, and the faire *Clerimond*. chap. 35

How *Valentine* and *Orson* escaped the Castle of *Ferragus* and sayled with the two Ladies into *Aquitain*. chap. 36

How King *Ferragus* assembled all his men of warre, to take revenge upon *Valentine* and his sister *Clerimond*, and how he followed them into *Aquitaine*. chap. 37

How

The Table.

How the Duke of *Aquitaine* was taken prisoner in the battell by *Ferragus*, and how *Orson* set him free by the help of *Pacolet*. chap. 38

How *Orson* tryed the constancy of the Lady *Faxon*, before hee married her. chap. 39

How *Ferragus* the Gyant, strengthened his forces by the aid of King *Trompart*, and the Enchanter *Adrimaine*. chap. 40

Of the pitifull tale the Empresse made to *Valentine* her Son before his farewell to *Constantinople*. And what speeches passed between him, his Father, and his Uncle. chap. 41

How *Valentine* and the Green Knight were taken prisoners in the battel of *Constantinople*, by the Soldan *Moradin* and his men. chap. 42

How *Pacolet* by enchantment delivered *Valentine* and the Green Knight out of the bondage of the Soldan, and how *Pacolet* cozened the Soldan when he had him upon his horse, and in stead of carrying him into *Portugall*, brought him into *Constantinople*, where he was hanged. chap. 43

How King *Trompart* came before *Aquitaine*, to succour *Ferragus*, and brought with him *Adrimain* the Enchanter, who betrayed *Pacolet*. And how the King of *Inde* caused King *Trompart*'s head to be stricke off: and how he would have married with *Clerimond*, and how *Pacolet* was revenged on *Adrimain*, in the shape of a woman. And how *Ferragus* was slain; and how *Orson* and the Duke went with an army to *Constantinople* to succour the Emperor: and how *Orson* led along with him his Mother. And how all the Pagans were slaine before *Constantinople*, and how the Emperor received his Son *Orson*, and his wife *Belysant* with joy. chap. 44

How King *Pepin* tooke leave of the Emperor at his departure from *Greece*, and how *Orson* went along with him. How *Garnier* fainted, and left the knife in the bed. And accused *Orson* fasly of Treason, and how the knife was found in the Kings bed. And how *Orson* claimed combat against his accusers, when they would have adjudged him, and it was (by the twelve Peers of *France*) granted. And how *Valentine* in seeking *Clerimond* arrived in *Antioch*, and fought with a Dragon, and in the end, he slew the Dragon. And how *Valentine* after the conquest of the dragon caused the King of *Antioch* and all his land to be baptized, and of the lawlesse love of the Queen *Roxamond*, And how the King of *Antioch* was put to death,

The Table

death for renouncing his Mahometry, by *Brandiffer* his wives Father: and how the Emperour of *Greece* and the *Greene Knight*, were taken prisoners by *Brandiffer*. chap. 45

How *Clerimond* after the yeare was past, feigned her selfe mad because she would not wed the King of *Inde*. And of *Lucar* that would revenge the death of his Father King *Trompart* upon the King of *Inde*. And how King *Lucar* in the City of *Esclardy*, wedded *Rozamond* the faire daughter of *Brandiffer*. And how *Valentine* departed from *Esclardy*, to breath out defiance: and of the answer hee brought from the Indian King. And how *Rozamond* found a way to be taken and led unto the Indian King, and how King *Lucar* caused *Brandiffer* to stay with him, and sent *Valentine* into *Angory* against King *Pepin*: and how King *Pepin* took the city of *Angory*. chap. 46

How *Valentine* returned backe to *India* after the battell, and bare with him the dead body of *K. Murgalan*. And how he heard tidings of his Father, and how *Pacolet* freed the Indian K. and left *Brandiffer* in prison. And how *K. Lucar* caused all that hundred that watched the Indian to be drawn to death at horse railes, and how *Valentine* and *Pacolet* departed secretly out of his host, and went to *Angory*, and of the vision of King *Pepin*, and how he went into the holy land with the twelve Peeres of *France*, and what happened. And how *Hausfray* and *Henry* betrayed their father King *Pepin*, and the twelve Peeres of *France*. And how the Caliph of *Bendas* made truce between the Indian, *Lucar* and *Brandiffer*. And how *Hausfray* to further his Treason came before *Lucar* & *Brandiffer*, & how he was intrapped in his own net. chap. 47

How *Valentine* and *Pacolet* came before the castle, and how *Pacolet* raised up the devill, to aske his counsell about the taking of the castle. And how *Brandiffer* brought the twelve Peers of *France* into his strong castle, and imprisoned them. And how he besieged the City of *Angory*. And how *Brandiffer* having knowledge that *Lucar* was captive in *Angory*, made means to *Valentine* to deliver him up on sufficient ranfome. chap. 48

How *Myllon Daugler* (who was taken for the King of *France*) was delivered out of prison, instead of *K. Lucar*. And how *Valentine* and the Duke *Myllon* issued out of the City of *Angory*, and won the bat-

The Table.

battell from the *Sarazens*. And how King *Pepin* was delivered in change, for the King of *Indies* Marshall: and left *Angory*, and returned into *France* to succour his Wife. chap. 49

How *Valentine* under the shape of a Philition went into *India*, to see and speak with the fair *Clerimond*. And how *Valentine* rode away with her, and how the K. of *Britaine* was given to king *Pepin* by treason. And how *Valentine* took the strong castle, and delivered his father the Emperour, and all the rest of the prisoners. And how the Emperour, *Orson*, and the Green knight, kept a strong garrison in this castle, and how *Haufray* & *Henry* compassed the death of their Father. And how the Emperour of *Greece*, *Orson*, and the Green knight left the castle, and came to the succour of *Valentine* in *Angory*. And how the Christians issued out of the city of *Angory*, and bid battell to the *Sarazens*. And how *Valentine* ignorantly slew his own father. And how *Myllon Daugler* returned into *France*, and *Valentine* and *Orson* into *Greece*. chap. 50

How *Valentine* took leave of *Clerimond* before his Pilgrimage, and how K. *Hugon* demanded *Clerimond* for his wife, and how he betrayed *Orson* and the Green knight. And how *Galeran* delivered his Letters to the Ladies and of the grievous lamentations they made. How *Bellysart* and *Clerimond* came to know King *Hugons* treason, and how *Galeran* lost his head. And how *Orson* and the Green knight were set free. chap. 51.

How at the end of Seven yeares, *Valentine* died in the pallace of *Constantinople*, and how *Orson* turned Hermit. chap. 52.

FINIS

